This book addresses a wide range of reading needs by providing exercises that focus on comprehension and word strategies. It also provides an instructional process for meeting those needs. The instructional process is individualized, and is designed to: (1) assess initial reading competence; (2) direct learners to the chapters specifically related to their particular reading growth needs; (3) provide both learning and practice activities; and (4) encourage self-paced progress in chapters that give opportunities for self-evaluation. Introductory information in each chapter establishes the purpose for reading and completing activities and serves to motivate thoughtful participation. The book is designed to encourage reading for meaning. Chapter 1 provides for assessment of study-reading behaviors. Chapters 2 and 3 focus on getting meaning, or communicating with the writer. Chapters 4 and 6 provide instruction in identifying and understanding word meanings and their relationships. Developing sensitivity to various language styles is the focus of chapter 5. Chapter 7 provides a model for organizing and using a study-reading system, and chapter 8 assesses the knowledge and skills gained from studying chapters 2 and 7. Answers to each chapter's activities are at the end of the book. (MG)
Contents

Preface  xi
To the Instructor  xiii
To the Learner  xv

Chapter One: Learning about My Reading  1

Activities  
Exercise A.  Study Reading Behaviors  3
Exercise B.  Whole Selections (Comprehension)  7
Exercise C.  Paragraphs (Predicting)  11
Exercise D.  Sentence Parts (Factual)  15
Exercise E.  Sentences (Factual and Inference)  17
Exercise F.  Short Readings  
(Factual, Inference, Applied)  21
Exercise G.  Sight Words  25
Exercise H.  Sentences (Context)  27
Exercise I.  Word Parts (Pronunciation)  31
Exercise J.  Word Parts (Structural)  33
Exercise K.  Word Parts (Structural)  35
Chapter Six: Learning and Using More Words

- Sight-Word Strategy: 165
- Variation of Sight-Word Strategy: 166
- Foreign Phrases: 167
- Word Relationship Strategies: 168
  - I. Word Associations: 169
  - II. Cause and Effect: 173
  - III. Word Similarities: 175
  - IV. Word Opposites: 179
- Evaluation: 184

Chapter Seven: Study Reading

- Managing Study: 193
- Thinking and Skimming: 200
- Questioning: 201
- Notetaking: 204
- Steps in the Study-Reading System: 208
- Taking Tests: 209
- Evaluation: 212

Chapter Eight: What Has Been Learned and What Else Can Be Done

- Think/Read/Assess: 221
  - Part I. Marking Words: 225
  - Part II. Word Meanings: 227
  - Part III. Word Similarities and Opposites: 231
  - Part IV. Study-Reading System: 233

Answers

- Chapter 1: 235
- Chapter 2: 241
- Chapter 3: 242
- Chapter 4: 245
- Chapter 5: 249
- Chapter 6: 250
- Chapter 7: 252
- Chapter 8: 253
Preface

Knowledge about learner characteristics and study behaviors form the basis for Reading to Achieve: Strategies for Adult/College Learners.

This textbook addresses a wide range of reading needs by providing exercises that focus on comprehension and word knowledge strategies. It also provides an instructional process for meeting those needs. The instructional process is individualized, and (1) assesses initial reading competence, (2) directs learners to the chapters specifically related to their particular reading growth needs, (3) provides both learning and practice activities, and (4) encourages self-paced progress in chapters that give opportunities for self-evaluation.

The text can be used alone or with instructor guidance. Introductory information in each chapter establishes the purpose for reading and completing activities and serves to motivate thoughtful participation.

This book is designed to encourage reading for meaning. Chapter 1 provides for assessment of study-reading behaviors. Chapters 2 and 3 focus on getting meaning, or communicating with the writer. Chapters 4 and 6 provide instruction in identifying understanding word meanings and their relationships. Developing sensitivity to various language styles is the focus of Chapter 5. Chapter 7 provides a model for organizing and using a study-reading system, and Chapter 8 assesses the knowledge and skills gained from studying Chapters 2 through 7. Answers to each chapter's activities are at the end of the book.

Alice M. Scales
Shirley A. Biggs
To the Instructor

Reading to Achieve: Strategies for Adult/College Learners is designed for maximum learner involvement, and written so the learner can read and respond in an easy-to-manage format. We believe, as do many others, that learners learn to read by reading. In this text the learner is expected to read independently in and out of class. If you find that the learner needs help with reading the text, however, the instructional strategies provide models for preparing additional clarifying information.

Read the text before using it with learners. Introduce it to learners as a self-paced text. You may want to allow time in class for learners to read. You will find that learners will be studying different sections at different times, so you may want to individualize your class periods to accommodate their learning needs.

There are eight chapters in Reading to Achieve. Chapter 1 allows the learner to assess his reading behaviors, and no instruction is offered in this chapter. After learners have completed exercise A, however, you can discuss it and the comments section with them. This discussion could be used to introduce them to the additional exercises in Chapter 1. Encourage the learners to do as much as they can in each exercise. You may have to assure some of them that instruction will begin in Chapter 2.

Chapters 2 and 3 require extensive practice in writing questions. The purpose of this practice is to establish automaticity of question-asking behavior. When automaticity is established, the learner is more likely to ask questions when faced with difficult reading material. Chapters 4 and 6 provide study and review of words. In these chapters, learners will develop strategies to help them pronounce words, un-
To the Instructor

derstand how word parts contribute to meaning, and see relationships among words.
The purpose of word study is to develop the ability to communicate with the writer
without interference from word identification problems. Chapter 5 makes provisions
for the learner's increased awareness of language styles. In Chapter 7, the learner
will study and develop a study-reading system, and in Chapter 8, will test his
knowledge of what was learned from the text.

The maze passages near the beginning of Chapter 1 and at the end of Chapters 2
through 7 were designed to monitor reading progress. Directions for reading and
responding, and criteria for interpreting the results, are stated in the evaluation
section of each chapter.
We wrote Reading to Achieve: Strategies for Adult/College Learners for you. In this book you will find ways to improve your chances for reading success. The first chapter will help you learn more about your reading and study behavior. Chapters 2 and 3 suggest ways to help you understand what you read. In these chapters you will practice writing a number of questions about sentences. One reason for writing so many questions is to remind you to ask questions when you must read difficult material. Learners with whom we have worked report that the more they practiced writing questions, the more they remembered to ask questions when they had to read difficult assignments. Further, the more questions they asked about their difficult reading assignments, the more they were able to comprehend those assignments. So, asking questions is a valuable comprehension strategy. Chapter 4 shows how to study word parts; you will review steps for using the dictionary and increase your knowledge of common word parts that you often find in your reading. Chapter 5 can help you become more aware of language styles. You will study word relationships in Chapter 6. Words relate to each other; knowledge of the relationships help expand your meaning vocabulary, and a large meaning vocabulary forms the basis for successful comprehension. Chapter 7 will help you organize a study-reading system. Finally, in Chapter 8, you will test what you studied in Chapters 2 through 7.

This textbook can be self-teaching. You can study it on your own or with the help of an instructor.

Answers for self-checking are at the end of the book. Whenever necessary, go to that section and check your answers. Some are suggested answers—typical answers
To the Learner

from students that we have judged to be correct. So, your answers could be different from our suggested answers and still be correct. We did not list answers for parts of some chapters because there were many possible answers. You can check answers you are not sure of by discussing them with an instructor or by using a dictionary or thesaurus. In addition, when you are instructed to choose books, newspapers, and other materials to read, you will have studied the text and thus will be able to check your own answers.

A final word: we believe that you can greatly increase your chances for reading and study success if you have on hand a wide range of well-practiced strategies—strategies you can select and use when your reading becomes difficult or complex.
This chapter is designed to help you learn about yourself as a reader and a learner. It can help you discover how to improve your reading skills and increase your learning power. The objectives listed below describe what you will be able to do when you have followed directions carefully and completed the chapter. By doing the exercises in this chapter you will be able to achieve these objectives.

The objectives for this chapter are as follows:

1. To pinpoint interests and experiences you have had that can be used to improve your reading.
2. To increase your understanding of what you read.
3. To find out how you handle words you do not know as you read and study.
4. To find out when and where your personal language can be used to help you improve your reading.
5. To find out how much you know about commonly used words.
6. To find out what you need to improve your study habits and test-taking skills.

The assessment activity that follows can help you find out about your reading and study behavior. It helps to determine what you already know and what you need to
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

know. It also determines which of your habits and behaviors help you read and learn well and which do not. When you discover these things you will be able to use what you know to help you learn more. For example, when you know what you like to read about, you can choose books, magazines, and newspaper articles about things that interest you to read for practice. Interest in what you read will increase your enjoyment of reading and make you want to read more. Since one of the ways to improve reading is to read a lot, you can use your interest to help improve your reading.

There are comments at the end of each exercise in this chapter that will help you understand how your answers may be used to find out what to read and study. Chapters and chapter activities have been identified for your study and practice. Be sure to follow directions carefully.

The exercises in Chapter 1 are keyed to Chapters 2 through 7 in the following way:

Exercises A, B, D, E and F should be done first. Next study Chapter 2. After studying Chapter 2 return to Chapter 1 and do as much as you can of exercises C and H. When you have done as much as you can of exercise H, study Chapter 3. Next do exercises I, J, K and L of Chapter 1. Study Chapter 4 and do exercise M of Chapter 1. Study Chapter 5 and do exercises G and N. When those are completed, study Chapter 6 and do exercise O of Chapter 1. Finally, study Chapters 7 and 8.

Another way to complete this chapter and the book is to work through as much of each exercise in Chapter 1 as you possibly can. Then, work through Chapters 2 through 8.

Good luck with your reading and studying!
Exercise A. Study Reading Behaviors

DIRECTIONS
This inventory is designed to help you think about some of the things that you do and some of the things that you do not do as you read. It will also help you think about the way you use language. Think about what you do and do not do when you are reading and studying this exercise and it should help you to start organizing yourself so that you will become a better reader than you are now.

Now, please read and respond to each item below.

1. Why do you want to read better?

2. Do you learn best by: listening, listening and then asking questions, reading, reading and then asking questions, or a combination? Which combination?

3. As a reader, what would you like to do that you cannot now do?

4. Do you read the newspaper?

5. Do you usually understand newspaper stories, features and issues?

6. Do you use the newspaper for coupons, shopping or finding sales?

7. Can you prepare yourself for a particular job or career by reading? (If yes, answer item 8; if no, skip item 8.)

8. Where do you think you can find information about that job or career?

9. What have you read this week?

10. What do you like to read for fun?

11. Do you know when to use informal language? If yes, when? (Give an example.)

12. Do you know when to use formal language? If yes, when? (Give an example.)
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

13. Occasionally, when you are talking, do you find yourself talking more slowly because you are trying to think of the best word to use. Yes ___ No ___ (If yes, give an example.)

14. Do you sometimes get nervous and not do your best when you take tests? Yes ___ No ___ When was the last time that you had to take a test?

15. What do you do when you get to words you do not know?

16. Do you know when what you are reading is false? Yes ___ No ___ How do you know?

17. Do you know when what you are reading is true? Yes ___ No ___ How do you know?

18. Sometimes when you are reading, do you find that the sentences do not make sense because they do not say things the way you usually say them? Yes ___ No ___

19. Do you sometimes find that you can say a word in a sentence and not know what it means? Yes ___ No ___

20. Do you try to predict information as you read? Yes ___ No ___

21. Do you test yourself after reading something by thinking about what you have read? Yes ___ No ___

22. Do you sometimes need to talk privately with the instructor about your reading? Yes ___ No ___

23. Are there times when you would rather work with two or three other people, rather than with the whole class? Yes ___ No ___

24. How many hours each week will you commit yourself to study?

SELF-CHECK

a. Did you complete all statements? Yes ___ No ___

b. The number of statements you completed was ____________

c. You did not complete statements number ____________

COMMENTS

Now that you have worked through the Study Reading Behaviors form, you have begun to think about some of the things that you do and some of the things that you
do not do as you have attempted to improve your reading. This form should have made you think about at least twelve different factors that are important for better reading. They are:

1. Motivation — Items 1, 3, 7 and 8 asked you, if, as well as, why, you want to read better. If you have a goal for wanting to read better than you do now you will probably work very hard to fulfill that goal.

2. Learning Mode — Items 2, 22 and 23 asked you to think about how you learn best. If you learn best by listening, that is helpful because you learn when you listen. However, you need to work to learn just as well by reading because you cannot always depend on someone being around to tell you what you want to know. Also, there are times when you may need to work with someone when you are studying and at other times you may need to study alone.

3. Everyday Reading — Items 4, 5 and 6 asked if you use everyday type of reading material. If you do, you have probably found that your reading has saved you money and helped you understand much that is taking place in the world today. Reading, then, is a way of keeping in touch with life around you.

4. Reading Habits — Items 9 and 10 asked you about the type of reading that you do. Reading because you have to is necessary and reading for fun is terrific. If you do not read at all, start reading right now!

5. Language (Speaking) — Items 11, 12 and 13 asked you about your use of spoken language. If you do not use formal language at the right time, you may find that your needs are not being fulfilled because you are not speaking the way that is expected of you. Exercise M will ask you to find out if you use your language in different ways.

6. Pressure — Item 14 asked you about how you feel when you take tests. If you get nervous, it may be because you do not know how to take tests. Exercise O will address test-taking pressures.

7. Unknown Words — Item 15 asked you what you do when you come to words you do not know. For you to be aware of what you do is a starting point for learning additional ways to figure out unknown words. Exercises I, J and K will help you to discover some other things you may not know about unknown words.

8. Meaning — Items 16, 17 and 21 asked you if you think about what you read and if you know when what you read is true or false. If you are not able to tell the difference, you can be misled in
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

your reading. Exercises D, E and H will give you further help in discovering more about what you know about true and false sentences.

9. Language (Reading) —Item 18 asked you whether or not sentences make sense to you. Sometimes when sentences do not make sense, it may be because the writer writes differently from the way you speak. Exercises B and H will give you further help in understanding how your spoken language may differ from the way things are written.

10. Context —Item 19 asked you about how well you understand the meaning of words. Exercises H and N will help you to further understand if you can determine the meaning of a word by using other words in the same sentence.

11. Prediction —Item 20 questioned you about predicting as you read. Exercise C will help you to know if you are using prediction as a study method.

12. Commitment—Item 24 asked you about commitment. If you want to study better than you do now you will have to commit yourself to study a number of hours per week. Start now! Commit yourself to a specific number of hours of study. This commitment to study is necessary if you intend to read to achieve.
Exercise B. Whole Selections (Comprehension)

DIRECTIONS

The following selections have been prepared for you to read silently. They will help you to know if you can understand material written at different reading levels. When you come to the three word columns, circle the word that best fits the sentence. For example:

house
She put salt and kick on the table.

pepper

SELECTION I

Finger Painting

During the 1920's finger painting as a modern art-form was developed. A United States teacher named Miss Shaw developed it. She was teaching in Rome the time. She thought among the idea when she saw one of her pupils at cooking andacknowledged oilinjured. Her pupil was using his finger. He had certain that drawing oil. His classmates saw him draw pictures. Belief who did let. They wanted to draw pictures. People asked Miss Shaw to them draw pictures to home. She decided that they could. But, she had to find paint their friend. She had to feel pleasant. It could not be mortgages. She had harmless. To find he special paper for good results. The paper had to be a coating of an measures. She had best. To find the paint. Miss Shaw that the kind of pine hold found.

paint and paper that she wanted for finger painting. This made her pupils happy.

**SELF-CHECK**

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you check your answers? Yes____ No____

c. Your number of correct answers is ________________

d. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

**SELECTION II**

**Asthma**

Asthma is a chronic (continuing for a long time) disease. Its name means “breathless.” The disease shows itself in the form of periodic attacks of wheezing and coughing and shortness of breath. There are two types of asthma—bronchial and cardiac.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of suffering up.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of better crying back.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of back attacks feet.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of this type of asthma has great care forcing air from the lungs, although timely difficulty breathing.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of the caused immune air can enter by lungs. This condition is won by changes in the small ill a.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of the was immune bronchi. The bronchi are heavy tubes leading into the air sacs of the lungs.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of blood treated.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of Meanwhile were tube.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of About the attack the walls of the bronchi become swollen on fluid During after.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of glands force.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of and the bronchial fill pour out a thick mucus. The muscles around the lungs disease.

Bronchial asthma is the most common type. A person catches an attack of skins thick in chronic of the bronchi tighten, causing air to be trapped turn the lungs. If the walls timing after.

fluid feeling tips
while is severe, the skin becomes very pale and the bronchi and the fingernails
attack coughs lips
blue. finally a
turn parts. When the patient is won able to cough up the mucus, the
able. almost suffering
Force
attack ends. An attack may last a few minutes, a few hours, or several days.
When

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Did you check your answers? Yes_____ No______
c. Your number of correct answers is ___________.
d. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

SELECTION III

The Rise of Labor Unions

Labor groups first came about when workers and employers joined together

to make rules to protect themselves. These groups, called guilds, factory
protected
members.
both employers and workers soundly. Often employers themselves were equally.
any often join
also workers. One worker simply invited several other workers to free
therefore protected rules
with him to produce the product or provide a protection. For example, a
second jointly.
bread project where
baker walked fellow workers to help him produce bread and pastries and a
needed their
less up
chimney sweep often finished others to help him to perform his service. Thus,
needed be
the agreed join
same employer and the worker shared the same duties, the same interests, and
another simple other
problems.
the same samples.
also.
However, as business grew on smaller to larger operations, employers thus Shoppers worked less and less on the workers they hired. Workers interests and problems with Bread less by about less problems began to be different from those which the employers. They no longer see smarter this even of a result, workers-only groups were formed. These groups were the first labor unions.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you check your answers? Yes. No.

c. Your number of correct answers is ______.

d. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

COMMENTS

In this exercise you have read selections at different reading levels. The reading material ranged from a less advanced to a more advanced level. The reading level is not as important as what you did as you read. When you were reading the selection, you had to think. You probably asked yourself, "Does this word make sense in this sentence?" Or, you may have said to yourself, "This must be the right word. It makes sense." You could also have used what you know about the way people speak and write. That is, you knew that people would not say, "The pupil had certain his finger" so you substituted "The pupil had injured his finger." You knew the ways that people do and do not speak from your own experience in hearing language.

This experience was designed to find out how well you use your language to help you think and read. Chapter 2 provides you with more practice in thinking as you read.
Exercise C. Paragraphs (Predicting)

DIRECTIONS
Please show that you understand and can use the ideas from the following stories by responding to the directions at the end of each story.

Part I

1. Mr. White took the elevator to the fourth floor of Smith's Department Store. He went to buy a lamp for his girlfriend's birthday present but discovered that he did not have enough cash for the lamp. Finish the story.

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

2. One evening just before dark Mary decided to turn on her lamp. She turned the switch on the lamp but there was no light. List at least four reasons that could explain why Mary had no light.

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________________________

3. Yesterday Mark was among 30 excited university students who received degrees in law. Today he is going for a job interview. His interview is scheduled for 10:30 A.M. It is important that he makes a good impression. Finish the story by writing answers to the following questions.

a. How do you think Mark should dress for this interview? ________

________________________________________________________________________

b. Do you think that Mark should take anything with him?
   Yes____ No____. If yes, what? __________________________

________________________________________________________________________

c. Do you think Mark should arrive before 10:30 A.M.? Yes____
   No____. Why? __________________________

________________________________________________________________________
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

d. Do you think Mark should use informal language during the interview? Yes ______ No ______ Why? ____________________________________________________________

e. List three questions which you think the interviewer might ask Mark.
    ____________________________________________________________
    ____________________________________________________________
    ____________________________________________________________

f. List two questions which you think Mark might ask the interviewer.
    ____________________________________________________________
    ____________________________________________________________

Part II

1. Dr. X was an extremely ambitious young orthodontist. Unlike other professionals in his field, he deliberately took advantage of four of his affluent patients. He overprescribed pain medication for three of his trusting patients. And, in his zeal to earn more money, he extracted a perfectly healthy and well-placed tooth from a fourth patient. However, Dr. X was in for a surprise when lo, the fourth patient, an attorney-at-law... You finish the story.
    ____________________________________________________________
    ____________________________________________________________

2. Two young psychology students were friendly rivals. Each seemed obsessed with being the top student in the class and each was very proud of his academic record. They liked to compare the scores they had received on various tests they had taken during the term. Try as they might, neither seemed to be able to out-do the other. They seemed evenly matched until a new professor suggested that they test and compare themselves in some nonacademic areas. They did and were startled to learn... List four discoveries that the students could have made.
    a. ____________________________________________________________
    b. ____________________________________________________________
    c. ____________________________________________________________
    d. ____________________________________________________________

3. General meritorious awards will be presented to deserving hospital workers, whose unselfish actions prevented vandals from running rampant throughout the rehabilitation wing of the hospital. Patients and
hospital employees alike were elated by the bravery exemplified by these staff members. Write answers to the following questions.

a. How might the hospital workers have prevented the vandalism?

b. At what time of day might the danger of vandalism been the greatest? Why?

c. Do you think that the hospital should consider hiring security guards? Yes No Why?

d. List four measures the hospital might take to prevent vandalism.

f. What, in your thinking is an appropriate award for this act?

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you complete Part I? Yes No

c. Did you complete Part II? Yes No

d. The number of your answers that could be supported by the paragraphs in Part I was ____________

e. The number of your answers that could be supported by the paragraphs in Part II was ____________
This exercise was designed to help you determine how well you use information in paragraphs to predict what could logically happen. You may improve your reading prediction skills by working through the activities presented in Chapter 3.
Exercise D. Sentence Parts (Factual)

DIRECTIONS
Show that you can understand sentences by underlining the part of the sentence that answers a question about the sentence. For example:

Sentence—My car is in the repair shop.
Question—Where is my car?
Sentence with underlined answer—My car is in the repair shop.

Now, answer the questions below by underlining the correct phrase in each sentence.

Part I

1. Sentence—My car ran out of gas near the service station.
   Question—What happened to my car?
   
2. Sentence—Football players are not usually friendly with members of the other team during the game.
   Question—How do football players feel about members of the other team during the game?
   
3. Sentence—Swimming is good exercise for people of all ages.
   Question—Who is swimming good for?
   
4. Sentence—The TV picture was not clear.
   Question—What was the TV picture like?
   
5. Sentence—I decided to talk to my best friend before going home.
   Question—Who did I decide to talk to?
   
6. Sentence—The old bookstore on Market street had a sale on textbooks.
   Question—Where was the sale?
   
Part II

1. Sentence—The judge's decision regarding my attorney's behavior in court left everyone in the courtroom speechless.
   Question—What prompted the judge's decision?
   
2. Sentence—The multimillionaire's dedication of the statue to his pet cat was unusual, but no one in the audience seemed to regard it as such.
   Question—What was strange about the ceremony?
   
3. Sentence—The shop owners decided to cease operations for a full fiscal year in order to consolidate their many business ventures.
   Question—Why did the shop owners cease operations?
   
4. Sentence—Creativity is a human characteristic that is hard to explain, but easy to see in action.
   Question—Why is a race horse not described as creative?
   
5. Sentence—Transcendental meditation is practiced by people from various walks of life for different reasons.
   Question—Who practices transcendental meditation?
   
6. Sentence—My prize chrysanthemums have an indescribable odor.
   Question—What is special about my chrysanthemums?
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

**SELF-CHECK**

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you complete Part I? Yes____ No____

c. Did you complete Part II? Yes____ No____

d. Did you check your answers? Yes____ No____

e. The number right for Part I was ____________.

f. The number right for Part II was ____________.

g. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

**COMMENTS**

This exercise was designed to show how well you answer factual questions about sentences that have the information stated directly within them. You can practice answering questions in Chapter 2.
Exercise E. Sentences (Factual and Inference)

DIRECTIONS

Please show that you know what these sentences mean by rewriting the sentences as follows: (a) tell what the sentence says in your own words, or, say the sentence another way, and (b) tell what the sentence suggests but does not say. For example:

Sentence—There were tears in the handsome man’s eyes when the winner of the contest was announced.
Rewrite a. The handsome man was crying when the contest winner was announced.
Rewrite b. He lost the contest.

Now, finish the following sentences.

Part I

1. Her clothes were wet as she entered the house.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

2. The football player threw a long pass.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

3. The couple left city hall smiling happily.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

4. We romped on the beach.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

5. A truck hauled bricks away from the house.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

6. Two men wearing white overalls and carrying paint brushes went into the church on the corner.
   Rewrite a. 
   Rewrite b. 

Comments
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

Part II

1. A broad smile spread across her face as she read the letter.
   
   Rewrite a.
   
   Rewrite b.

2. Our long faces and downcast eyes drew the attention of the reporters as we left the courtroom.

   Rewrite a.
   
   Rewrite b.

3. The young man leaned tensely forward, drumming his fingers on the table as he waited for his companion's answer.

   Rewrite a.
   
   Rewrite b.

4. The business concluded, John walked slowly to his car as his smile faded and his shoulders drooped.

   Rewrite a.
   
   Rewrite b.

5. Just as she reached the door of the shop the clock struck ten and the windows darkened.

   Rewrite a.
   
   Rewrite b.
6. Her first taste of the unfamiliar food sent her running for water.

Rewrite a. ______________________________________________________

Rewrite b. ______________________________________________________

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you complete Part I? Yes____. No____.

c. Did you complete Part II? Yes____. No____.

d. Did you check your answers? Yes____. No____.

e. Were the “Rewrite a” sentences in Part I difficult for you to write?
   Yes____. No____. Did you write each sentence another way?
   Yes____. No____.

f. Were the “Rewrite b” sentences in Part I difficult for you to write?
   Yes____. No____. Did you write what the sentence suggested but did not say?
   Yes____. No____.

g. Were the “Rewrite a” sentences in Part II difficult for you to write?
   Yes____. No____. Did you write each sentence another way?
   Yes____. No____.

h. Were the “Rewrite b” sentences in Part II difficult for you to write?
   Yes____. No____. Did you write what the sentence suggested but did not say?
   Yes____. No____.

i. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

COMMENTS

This exercise was designed to show that you can restate what the sentence says, as well as, tell what the sentence suggested. If you were able to restate the sentence, that shows that you understand what is written, or, that you know the direct meaning of the sentence. If you were able to tell what the sentence suggested, that shows that you are able to understand beyond what is written, or, read between the lines. You will find practice activities for these skills in Chapter 2.
Exercise F. Short Readings (Factual, Inference, Applied)

DIRECTIONS
You are to read the following short readings and respond to the items that follow.

Part I

1. Two pairs of twins lived on our street. It was difficult to tell the twins apart since each pair looked alike and dressed alike. Both pairs liked sports and after each game they would stop for something to eat. One pair would go to the Mingle Snack Shop and the other pair would go to Happy's restaurant. Before eating they always washed their hands. One set of twins would go to the ladies' room and the other set would go to the men's room.
   a. How are the Mingle Shop and Happy's restaurant alike?
   b. Are the twins of the same sex? How do you know?

2. After being hit by a ball, John was rushed to the hospital. While he was there, he saw many people rushing back and forth into a room. Finally, it was his turn to go into that room. The doctor examined him and told him that his arm was broken. Poor John had to wear an arm cast. His arm healed in four weeks.
   a. What caused John's broken arm?
   b. What effect did the cast have on John's arm?

3. The sentences in the following story are not in the right order. Place a number on the line before each sentence to show which sentence comes first, second and so on.

   [Sentences not provided in image]

Part II

1. MY SISTER KAREN

   On a cold and rainy evening Kathleen drove home after a long visit with her sister Karen. She had done this for many weeks because Karen had been ill for a long time. Kathleen wondered if her sister's story about the doctor's reports was true. Her sister had said that the tests showed gradual improvement. Yet, as Kathleen thought about her sister's recent behavior and looks, she found it hard to believe that Karen's health had improved. Even though Kathleen prepared meals for her sister that appealed to the eye as well as the appetite, they often went untouched. Karen rarely left her bedroom. When she
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

did she seemed to tire easily. As Kathleen thought about her sister’s eating habits and her need to stay quietly in bed, she realized that Karen had never asked her to go with her to the doctor’s office. Kathleen had never even talked to the doctor! Why? She wondered. The quiet feeling of discomfort grew into real worry as she stopped the car in front of her house. Kathleen realized as she entered her front door that she was going to do something about her sister that she should have done sooner. She had decided to________________________

Because________________________________________

2. CITY SLICKER

I was filled with excitement as I prepared to move to the city. My attempt to understand such things as skyscrapers, city blocks, and streetcars left me confused. I had had a life filled with noisy and sometimes stubborn farm animals (mules, hogs, cows), vegetable gardens, pecan trees, firewood and cotton crops. Trying to imagine what a skyscraper looked like in my environment, the country, was almost impossible. Even a city block was hard for me to imagine when my only association with the word block had been a sawed-off tree trunk used for firewood. Although I was told that a streetcar was something to ride in and a street was paved with concrete, I could not put the two together. You see, I knew what a car was. However, when I thought about something made with concrete and a car, it made no sense, whatsoever, to me. Needless to say, I had to educate myself about city life. I began my education by comparing likeness of the new environment, the city, with likeness of the previous environment, the country. The comparisons were very useful to me. For example, the tall hickory nut tree which stood behind our house in the country and waved to me with its many branches when the wind blew was compared to the tall skyscrapers with their people and apartments in the city. I remember thinking to myself that one big difference between the hickory nut tree and the city skyscrapers was that the buildings did not wave when the wind blew. But, that was long ago. I am a city slicker now who knows better.

a. Tell how a farm yard full of animals might be like a skyscraper full of people________________________________________

b. Tell what the writer means by “block”? What is the meaning from the country? What is the city meaning?________________________________________

c. Tell how a city might be like a vegetable garden________________________________________

d. Tell what your feet might see and say about life on a farm________________________________________
3. LEARNING ABOUT MARRIAGE

I never knew there was so much to know about marriage customs. In just one lecture the instructor had my head spinning. I had heard of rich sheiks and their many wives but somehow I guess I never really believed that it really happened. I always thought that marriage was a one-woman, one-man arrangement. Any other arrangement seemed to me to be outside the law. Well, the man-woman (monogamous) relationship is what happens here and now. But even here in this country, this place, my town, there was a time when a man had more than one woman in his household who shared his wealth and looked after his comfort. The instructor described this kind of marriage as polygyny, a form of polygamy, a multi-spouse arrangement.

More surprising was the form of marriage called polyandry. A woman could have more than one husband in such an arrangement. Most often, however, a woman became the "wife" of several brothers. While she may have initially married one brother, usually the oldest, she frequently ended up as wife to any other brothers who happened to be living in the home. Other forms of polyandry existed but seem much more rare.

My head is still spinning as I enter the classroom for the second lecture. I never dreamed that there was so much to be learned about marriage.

Polygyny and polyandry, forms of polygamy, are alike in that both styles of marriage permitted more than one._

Polygyny and polyandry are different in that._

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Did you complete Part I? Yes_____ No_____
c. Did you complete Part II? Yes_____ No_____
d. Did you check your answers? Yes_____ No_____ 
e. The number right for Part I was_________
f. The number right for Part II was_________
g. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

In this exercise you were to show that you understood the direct meaning of the short stories, that you could compare meanings, that you understood beyond what was written and that you could think logically to solve problems using what was written. You can practice these skills further in Chapter 2.
Exercise G. Sight Words

DIRECTIONS
Please place a check (✓) mark on the line to the left of as many of the following words as you know.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List I</th>
<th></th>
<th>List II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. yesterday</td>
<td>18. its</td>
<td>1. direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. that</td>
<td>19. the</td>
<td>2. quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. announce</td>
<td>20. here</td>
<td>3. popular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. to</td>
<td>21. consider</td>
<td>4. peaceful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. look</td>
<td>22. smash</td>
<td>5. production</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. chocolate</td>
<td>23. of</td>
<td>6. core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. this</td>
<td>24. new</td>
<td>7. extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. are</td>
<td>25. attorney</td>
<td>8. original</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. they</td>
<td>26. rule</td>
<td>9. lighter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. east</td>
<td>27. by</td>
<td>10. psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. a</td>
<td>28. entrance</td>
<td>11. communicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. new</td>
<td>29. people</td>
<td>12. tribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. on</td>
<td>30. take</td>
<td>13. biology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. clash</td>
<td>31. give</td>
<td>14. otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. and</td>
<td>32. where</td>
<td>15. counterpart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. congress</td>
<td>33. deal</td>
<td>16. confirm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. which</td>
<td>34. from</td>
<td>17. precise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

35. can
36. have
37. pan
38. speak
39. will
40. should
41. testify
42. maker
43. billion
44. American
45. is
46. with
47. says
48. been
49. bring
50. have

35. ritual
36. select
37. special
38. hostage
39. veteran
40. spirit
41. disability
42. nation
43. arrive
44. weather
45. maintain
46. independent
47. shoreline
48. genuine
49. active
50. emerge
### List III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>mnemonic</th>
<th>18.</th>
<th>optimist</th>
<th>35.</th>
<th>evasive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>loquacious</td>
<td>19.</td>
<td>overt</td>
<td>36.</td>
<td>crude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>arbitrary</td>
<td>20.</td>
<td>sentimental</td>
<td>37.</td>
<td>remnant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>benevolent</td>
<td>21.</td>
<td>segregate</td>
<td>38.</td>
<td>dissonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>sordid</td>
<td>22.</td>
<td>lethal</td>
<td>39.</td>
<td>reciprocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>esthetic</td>
<td>23.</td>
<td>affluent</td>
<td>40.</td>
<td>altruism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>inept</td>
<td>24.</td>
<td>amnesty</td>
<td>41.</td>
<td>ploy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>abate</td>
<td>25.</td>
<td>fatal</td>
<td>42.</td>
<td>banal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>dogmatic</td>
<td>26.</td>
<td>famish</td>
<td>43.</td>
<td>vagary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>averse</td>
<td>27.</td>
<td>fictitious</td>
<td>44.</td>
<td>temperance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>truculent</td>
<td>28.</td>
<td>frustrate</td>
<td>45.</td>
<td>intrusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>emasculate</td>
<td>29.</td>
<td>concise</td>
<td>46.</td>
<td>culminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>mundane</td>
<td>30.</td>
<td>curtail</td>
<td>47.</td>
<td>tenuity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>naive</td>
<td>31.</td>
<td>implicit</td>
<td>48.</td>
<td>acquiesce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>hostile</td>
<td>32.</td>
<td>explicit</td>
<td>49.</td>
<td>proliferate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>verbose</td>
<td>33.</td>
<td>refute</td>
<td>50.</td>
<td>capricious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>tense</td>
<td>34.</td>
<td>condense</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SELF-CHECK

a. Do you know all of the words in List I? Yes____ No____
   Your number right is__________________________.

b. Do you know all of the words in List II? Yes____ No____
   Your number right is__________________________.

c. Do you know all of the words in List III? Yes____ No____
   Your number right is__________________________.

d. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

### COMMENTS

In this exercise you read the three sight word lists. The words in List I were taken from daily newspapers. The words in List II were taken from commonly read magazines. And, the words in List III were taken from a collection of words college students said that they wanted to learn. The words from the lists that you do not know should be studied. Suggestions for sight-word study are found in Chapter 6.
Exercise H. Sentences (Context)

DIRECTIONS
Sometimes when you are reading sentences, you can figure out words that could make sense in a sentence before you read the word, or figure out the meanings of words you do not know from other words in the sentence.

Example
a. I ate_________
   b. I went to the store to__________ a sweater.

Words such as cookies or breakfast make sense in the first sentence. Words such as buy or exchange make sense in the second sentence.

Example
You may figure out the meanings of the words "gasoline," "violated," and "proceeded" in the following sentences by using other words in the sentences.

a. A liquid fuel called gasoline is used to power most cars.
   b. Three cars parked in the no-parking area violated the city's code.
   c. As the firemen went into the burning building, they proceeded with care.

(1) You may figure out the meaning of the word "gasoline" in the first sentence by noticing the word called. Here something is called gasoline, liquid fuel is gasoline. Therefore, gasoline means liquid fuel. (2) You may find the meaning of "violated" in the second sentence by going back to the part of the sentence, "parked in the no-parking area," this means that someone did something wrong. So, violated here means did something wrong. (3) You may find the meaning of "proceeded" in the third sentence by going back to the part of the sentence, "went into the burning building"; this means went forward. So proceeded here means went forward.

Finish this exercise according to the directions at the beginning of each section.

Part I
A. Use what you know about everyday life and language to make the following sentences make sense.

1. The church bell did not___________ before lunch today.
2. Our President belongs to the___________ party.
3. Only three people attended the garage sale; it was a__________.
4. Her car skidded on the wet___________ and stopped.
5. I dropped the letter in the__________ on my way to work.
6. A no-smoking sign was nailed to the___________ in the doctor's office.
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

B. Figure out the meaning of the underlined words in the following sentences. Underline those words which help you with the meaning and write the meaning on the blank lines.

1. An office such as yours is a good place to work and to keep books.
   Meaning

2. He glided through the water, swimming at an easy pace.
   Meaning

3. The five friends hung around the store until one pointed to a sign that said no loitering.
   Meaning

4. The noxious gas made me ill and unable to attend classes.
   Meaning

5. She stalked out of the room and continued to walk angrily down the street.
   Meaning

6. Our central government employs thousands of federal workers.
   Meaning

Part II

A. Use what you know about everyday life and language to make the following sentences make sense.

1. It was not raining this morning so I left my__________________ at home.
2. He coughed and sneezed so much that I was sure he was coming down with a(n)__________________.
3. The music was playing so__________________ that I could hardly hear it.
4. Newspapers often let us know when merchandise goes on__________________ at department stores.
5. Inflation has caused the value of the dollar to__________________
6. It is up to the governor to pardon the__________________ for the crime he allegedly committed.

B. Figure out the meaning of the underlined words in the following sentences. Underline those words which help you with the meaning and write the meaning on the blank lines.

1. Our club social chairman is perfect for the job. She is gregarious.
   Meaning
2. The runner huffed and puffed as he neared the finish line. He was 
winded.
Meaning

3. Being a placid child, he smiled and did not have very much to say.
Meaning

4. We once thought that being wealthy was synonymous with being happy.
Meaning

5. I grew wary of the stranger who walked silently behind me on the dark 
street.
Meaning

6. College students must learn to handle their money prudently in these 
days of high inflation.
Meaning

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Did you complete Part I? Yes____ No____
c. Did you complete Part II? Yes____ No____
d. Did you check your answers? Yes____ No____
e. The number right in Part I, Section B was__________
f. The number right in Part II, Section B was__________
g. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your 
number of right answers.

COMMENTS

In this exercise you were to use what you know about language and everyday life to 
understand the meaning of sentences. Your knowledge of language could have helped 
you to know the type of word that was missing, and the type of word that was 
underlined. Your everyday life experiences could have helped you to know what 
was missing and what might make sense in finding out the meanings of words. 
Chapter 3 will provide help for you with these skills.
**Exercise I. Word Parts (Pronunciation)**

**DIRECTIONS**
Please show that you can divide words into parts to help you pronounce them.

**Examples**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a. pokle</th>
<th>b. fleshshelf</th>
<th>c. cater</th>
<th>d. diselton</th>
<th>e. stuing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pokle</td>
<td>flesh shelf</td>
<td>cet er or ce ter</td>
<td>dis el tion</td>
<td>stu ing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, divide the following nonsense words into separate parts.

1. extopness
2. shuple
3. mitcher
4. vering
5. phuter
6. carlong
7. priwle
8. saring
9. poyer
10. friendplug
11. misthonment
12. whuring
13. startchair
14. hooxer
15. cluving
16. dipondtion
17. screamsky
18. luqkle
19. conjectish
20. clogtle
21. nonsichood
22. genver
23. brefspool
24. dralping
25. chusle
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you complete all the nonsense words? Yes____ No____

c. Did you divide some of the nonsense words because of the way the letters were arranged? Yes____ No____

d. Did you divide some of the nonsense words because you recognized two words? Yes____ No____

e. Did you divide some of the nonsense words because you recognized groups of letters at the beginning of words? Yes____ No____

f. Did you divide some of the nonsense words because you recognized groups of letters at the end of words? Yes____ No____

g. Did you check your answers? Yes____ No____

h. The number right was_________________

i. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

COMMENTS

In this exercise you were to show how well you are able to divide words into parts to help you pronounce them. By dividing words into parts, you show that you can do one step that is necessary to pronounce words. In Chapter 4 you will learn more about dividing words into parts.
Exercise J. Word Parts (Structural)

DIRECTIONS

Please show that you know the meaning of prefixes (meaningful word parts placed at the beginning of words) and can identify them. Underline the prefix and write its meaning. For example:

Word: bimonthly
Underlined prefix: bi-
Prefix meaning: two

Now underline the prefix in each word and write its meaning on the blank lines.

1. decongestion
2. disadvantage
3. exchange
4. incredible
5. interstate
6. misapprehend
7. nonacquittal
8. premature
9. reconvene
10. transplant

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Did you complete all the words? Yes___ No___
c. Did you check your answers? Yes___ No___
d. The number right was_______
e. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

COMMENTS

In this exercise you identified prefixes and wrote their meanings. If you know the meanings of prefixes, you can figure out the meanings of hundreds of words. In Chapter 4 you will find activities that will help you learn more about prefixes.
Exercise K. Word Parts (Structural)

**DIRECTIONS**

Underline the root in each word. The root is the core or main part of a word. Write the meaning of the root in the space following the two words. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words with roots</th>
<th>Words with underlined roots</th>
<th>Root meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portable, export</td>
<td>portable, export</td>
<td>carry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, underline the root in each word and write its meaning on the blank lines.

1. location, local
2. inspection, spectator
3. telegraph, graphics
4. benefit, benediction
5. biology, biography
6. credit, credence
7. vocation, vocal
8. microscope, microcomputer
9. education, educe
10. maternity, maternal

**SELF-CHECK**

a. Check your answers.

b. Did you complete all the words? Yes_____ No_____.

c. Did you check your answers? Yes_____ No_____.

d. The number right was______________

e. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

**COMMENTS**

In this exercise you showed that you can identify the roots of words and write their meanings. By doing this, you are able to figure out the meanings of hundreds of words. Chapter 4 has exercises that you can use to practice this skill.
Exercise L. Word Parts (Structural)

DIRECTIONS

Please show that you can identify suffixes (word parts added to the end of words) and know how they change word meanings by underlining the suffix and writing its meaning, or, tell how it will change the word. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Underlined suffix</th>
<th>Underlined suffix's meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bereavement</td>
<td>bereavement</td>
<td>an action or state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, underline the suffix in each word and write its meaning on the blank lines.

1. abortion
2. monthly
3. brotherhood
4. phraseology
5. motionless
6. painter
7. dogmatist
8. quietness
9. joyous
10. removable

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Did you complete all the words? Yes____ No____.
c. Did you check your answers? Yes____ No____.
d. The number right was__________.
e. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.

In this exercise you underlined suffixes and wrote their meanings. If you are able to write the correct meaning of the suffixes, that shows that you are able to use word parts to help you figure out the meanings of hundreds of words. You will find practice activities for suffixes in Chapter 4.
Exercise M. Language (Usage)

**DIRECTIONS**

Sometimes different people use different forms of the English language to express themselves. You are to write how you might say something for everyday use, how you might say it if you were in a business situation and how you might say it if you were going to write it in a textbook. For example: You might respond to “the sting of a bee” in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Everyday language as:</th>
<th>Business language as:</th>
<th>Textbook language as:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ouch!</td>
<td>The honeybee stung me and it hurts.</td>
<td>The barbed sting from the honeybee that pierced my skin is causing severe pain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please note that they all mean nearly the same thing, but were said in different ways.

Now, provide responses to the items below.

**Part I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Everyday</th>
<th>Business</th>
<th>Textbook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Spoiled food in the refrigerator</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Telephone bills</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bus fare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

Part II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reasons for attending classes</th>
<th>Everyday</th>
<th>Business</th>
<th>Textbook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What my future will look like three years from now</th>
<th>Everyday</th>
<th>Business</th>
<th>Textbook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traveling to another town</th>
<th>Everyday</th>
<th>Business</th>
<th>Textbook</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SELF-CHECK

a. Did you provide a response for each item in Part I? Yes_____. No_____.

b. Did you provide a response for each item in Part II? Yes_____. No_____.

c. Did you check your answers? Yes_____. No_____.

COMMENTS

In this exercise you used your knowledge of language to express yourself in three different ways. It is important to know how to speak differently when you meet different people. You know that people often change their language in the same way they change their clothes. When they go to a football game, they wear sports clothes for comfort and they use their football language to express their thoughts and feelings to others. But when they go to the symphony or to a formal business meeting their clothes change and so does their language. When the language and the clothes are carefully chosen for each occasion, the concert is likely to be more fun and the business meeting is likely to be more successful. In Chapter 5 you will find activities that will provide practice in selecting language for the many occasions in your life.
Exercise N. Word Meanings (Multiple)

DIRECTIONS
Please show that you know that one word may have different meanings in different sentences by choosing the right word and writing it on the blank space in each sentence. For example:
The words are: notes, bussed, entrance

Sentence a. The men used bank________________to pay their bills.
Sentence b. I wrote several________________to my friend.
Sentence c. Our house and car_______________were not paid.

The word "notes" should be written in the blank space because it is the only word, of the three, that makes sense in the sentences. However, the word "notes" has a different meaning in each sentence.

Now, finish the following sentences.

Part I

1. The words are: exploded, private, order
   a. The judge brought________________to the courtroom by banging his gavel.
   b. Mr. White will________________his lunch now.
   c. He did not obey the______________, so he was punished.

2. The words are: although, government, other
   a. My state________________decided to support child care.
   b. Business in this city belongs to one branch of______________.
   c. They see each________________often.

3. The words are: present, something, within
   a. The____________was delayed in the mail.
   b. John will________________his speech soon.
   c. Two women were not______________in class today.

4. The words are: behind, against, service
   a. After worship people talked about how much they enjoyed the church______________.
   b. That person will________________the car in one hour.
   c. Bill, the store clerk, was______________looking for the lost stock.
   d. They hid______________benches to avoid being hit by the bricks.

5. The words are: shelter, admittance, left
   a. If it had been________________to the General, all would have arrived in good spirits.
   b. One teacher thought about spanking the child for using her _______________hand.
   c. They________________after many hours of debate.

6. The words are: another, face, last
   a. __________________the door.
   b. What is the______________value of a one dollar bill?
c. Mr. Smith was the_________ runner in the foot race.
d. Mrs. Smith decided to_________ the dress collar so that it would stand up.

Part II

1. The words are: run, single, arrange
   a. The store had a_________ on snow shovels during the blizzard.
   b. We had to_________ for the party at least a month in advance.
   c. He tried to_________ the business but failed because he lacked experience.

2. The words are: blemish, wind, result
   a. We needed to_________ down after the difficult test.
   b. He was careful not to_________ his school record with poor grades.
   c. She covered the_________ with the new brand of make-up.

3. The words are: bind, buy, top
   a. She earned_________ grades but dropped out of school at the end of the term.
   b. We found it impossible to_________ our recent performance. It was our last performance. It was our best.
   c. He found himself in a_________ after telling the little white lie.

4. The words are: record, warn, sound
   a. He worked very hard to_________ his excellent_________.
   b. We managed to_________ the entire musical program.
   c. He did_________ the alarm before the fire spread.

5. The words are: rate, shift, bank
   a. They had to_________ all the new materials to a different room.
   b. His reading_________ increased dramatically.
   c. Workers on the night_________ earned a larger salary.

6. The words are: free, back, lead
   a. We like to_________ sound ideas.
   b. The lawyer worked for many weeks to_________ his client.
   c. He trusted us so he gave us a_________ hand.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Did you complete Part I? Yes No.
c. Did you complete Part II? Yes No.
d. Did you check your answers? Yes No.
e. The number right for Part I was_________.
f. The number right for Part II was_________.
g. Turn to the Profile Chart at the end of this chapter and circle your number of right answers.
In this exercise you were to show that you understand that one word may have different meanings in different sentences by choosing the right word from a group of words to complete a sentence. Words have different meanings in different sentences. If you know the different ways of using words, then you can better understand what you are reading. In Chapter 6 you will find activities that will help you learn more about word meanings.
## Exercise O. Study Skills

### DIRECTIONS

Place a check (✓) mark in the appropriate column after each question about your study habits. Check your columns as follows:
- Column AA—yes or most of the time.
- Column BB—sometimes or not often.
- Column CC—no or almost never.
- Column DD—I do not understand the statement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A. Self-Management</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Do you have a special place to study?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Do you have to share your study area?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Do you mind sharing your study place?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Do you keep the following special tools for reading and study:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. sharp pencils (more than one)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. pens (more than one)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. a dictionary?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. a thesaurus?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e. clean paper?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f. note cards?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g. other materials?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Do you read and study every weekday (Monday through Friday)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Do you read and study on weekends?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Do you set aside time to read and study?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Do you start to study for a test as soon as you learn that you must take it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>When you have a lot of reading to do, do you read some at one time and some at another time?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>When you study, do you turn off the:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. radio?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. TV?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. record player?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>When you study for a long time do you usually take a break or rest?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### B. Taking Notes and Summarizing Information

12. Do you make notes in your book when you read?

13. Do you take notes on paper or in a notebook when you read?
### Chapter 1. Learning about Reading

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14. Do you mark and underline information you think is important as you read?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Can you tell in a few words about something you have read?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Can you tell in a few words about something you have heard?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. When you are reading can you tell when the writer makes an important point?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. When you are listening can you tell when a speaker makes an important point?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Do you rewrite your reading notes?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Do you rewrite your listening notes?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Finding Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21. Do you use a dictionary when you want to find out:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. how to spell a word?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. how to say a word?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. what a word means?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Do you use a thesaurus when you want to find:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. a word with a similar meaning?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. a word with the opposite meaning?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Do you use an atlas to find the map of a particular place?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Do you use an almanac to find out about weather, important dates or other useful facts?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Do you use the card catalog in the library when you want to find a certain book?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Do you use the Readers’ Guide to Periodic Literature when you need to find a magazine or journal?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Do you ask the librarian for help when you need it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using Clues in Books to Think and Learn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28. Do you use the index in a book to find specific information?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Do you read the table of contents to find out what the chapters in a book or stories in a magazine will be about?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Do you read the preface or foreword in a book to find out the writer’s point of view?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Do you read and think about the titles of each chapter?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Do you pay special attention to words that stand out (underlined, in boldface, in CAPITAL LETTERS, in color or in italics)?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
33. Do you read summaries, conclusions and introductions before reading the rest of the book, article or chapter?

34. Do you read questions at the ends of chapters before you read the chapters?

35. Do you ask yourself questions about what you are reading as you read?

36. Do you read some things faster than others?

E. Taking Tests

37. Whenever possible, do you read the whole test before beginning to write answers?

38. Do you try to divide your time so that you will have enough time for each section on the test?

39. Do you read all subheadings and directions carefully before writing?

40. When you cannot think of an answer to a question quickly, do you skip it and return to it later?

41. Do you answer all questions on the test?

42. Do you make sure that you have written your answers clearly?

43. If it is an oral test, do you speak clearly in formal language?

| Count the number of check marks for each column. Write your total for each column. |

| SELF-CHECK |
| a. Did you check all the items? Yes____ No_____ |
| b. Enter on the proper line all the statements you did not check: |
| Section A, statements |
| Section B, statements |
| Section C, statements |
| Section D, statements |
| Section E, statements |
| c. My highest total is for Column________ |
| d. I did not know what items________ meant. |

In this exercise you asked yourself some questions about how you study and take tests. Now, you are probably thinking about the things that you can do to make your study time more useful. Chapter 7 provides you with more useful ideas for studying and taking tests.
PROFILE CHART

Circle the numbers that show the number of right answers you earned on the exercises. Then look at the left side of the chart to find out what your score means.

A score in range A means that you may be able to complete similar exercises in this book with little instructor guidance.
A score in range B means that you may be able to complete similar exercises in this book with some instructor guidance.
A score in range C means that you may be able to complete similar exercises in this book with instructor guidance and much additional practice based on the exercises in the text.

When you have completed all of the exercises, draw a line from circle to circle to complete your profile of scores.
Based on the exercises in the text.
When you have completed all of the exercises, draw a line from circle to circle to complete your profile of scores.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Range A you need</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or no instructor</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidance.</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85%</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range B you need</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructor</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidance.</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75%</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range C you need</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increasing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructor</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidance.</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50%</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You were referred to this chapter from Exercises B, D, E and F in Chapter 1. The exercises in that chapter helped you sort out some of your thinking about the reading of sentences and longer passages. You should recall that in Chapter 1 you had to read and answer questions about what you read. You also had to read and restate sentences differently using your own words. Answering questions and restating the sentences showed that you understood what you read. Understanding what you are reading means that you are communicating with the writer.

The purpose for reading is to communicate with the writer. When you communicate with the writer you either learn something different or you find that you and the writer share the same knowledge. This kind of communication occurs when you and the writer recognize and fulfill your responsibilities. The writer's responsibility is to write in a clear and understandable style so that you can grasp the content of what is written. Your responsibility is to use what you know about language and life to help you grasp the writer's meaning. This chapter will provide study and practice activities so that you may strengthen your skills in grasping the writer's meaning.

In this chapter you will study and practice ways to understand the direct meaning of what is stated in written sentence parts and short readings.

**THINKING STRATEGIES**

If you study meaningful sentence parts, you will force yourself to pay attention to the meaning and function of groups of words within sentences. For example, words
in the sentence “I boiled green beans for dinner.” may be grouped as “I boiled / green beans / for dinner.” The first sentence part told you that someone did something; the second sentence part told you what the something is that someone did; and the third sentence part told you why or when the someone did what he or she did. If you were asked to use the sentence to tell, “What was boiled for dinner?” Your answer should be the sentence part, “green beans.” Your answer came directly from the sentence. You needed the other words in that sentence to help you get the answer to the question.

Look at the following sentence. "John stopped when he saw the muzzled German shepherd running behind his master toward the department store." Many questions may be asked about that sentence. Some questions are: (1) What did John see? (2) What was the muzzled German shepherd doing? (3) What ran behind his master? (4) What did John do when he saw the German shepherd? (5) Where was the muzzled German shepherd? These questions can be answered using words or word groups from the sentence. The questions with the underlined answers from the sentence are: (1) What did John see? the muzzled German shepherd (2) What was the muzzled German shepherd doing? running (3) What ran behind his master? muzzled German shepherd (4) What did John do when he saw the German shepherd? John stopped (5) Where was the muzzled German shepherd? behind his master Why do you ask questions about sentences and can find answers, you are learning to gain more meaning from what you read.

Let us take another sentence and answer questions about it. The sentence: "My boyfriend told me that he tried to pay attention as Mr. Z was speaking about child psychology, but Mr. Z was boring so he fell asleep." Some questions are: (1) What did her boyfriend try to do? (2) What happened to her boyfriend while Mr. Z was speaking? (3) Who was her boyfriend listening to? (4) What was Mr. Z’s topic? (5) In her boyfriend’s opinion, how did Mr. Z present himself? Answers to these questions can be taken from the wording of the sentence about Mr. Z. Here are the questions with underlined answers taken directly from the sentence. (1) What did her boyfriend try to do? he tried to pay attention (2) What happened to her boyfriend while Mr. Z was speaking? he fell asleep (3) Who was her boyfriend listening to? Mr. Z (4) What was Mr. Z’s topic? child psychology (5) In her boyfriend’s opinion, how did Mr. Z present himself? Mr. Z was boring

Remember, we said earlier that asking questions about sentences will force you to pay attention to the meaning. When you pay attention, you are more likely to understand what you are reading. Now, it is your turn to ask questions and find answers in sentences.
DISCUSSION AND PRACTICE

A first step in understanding what is written is to ask yourself questions. Sometimes when we read, we are able to say all of the words but we do not always know what the words mean when we put them together. The following selections will help you practice asking yourself questions about sentences. You will notice that the sentences have been pulled apart so that you can read, answer and write questions about each sentence. The words that you choose to answer your questions must be in the sentences. The questions that you write will be written so that there are words in the sentences to answer your questions. In other words, write your questions so that answers can be taken directly from the sentence. For example: the question, "What did I bake?" can be answered with the words in the sentence, "I baked a pumpkin pie." The answer is "a pumpkin pie."

In Selection I you should: (1) read the first sentence, (2) read the first question and its answer, (3) read the second question, (4) write an answer to the second question using words in the sentence, (5) read the first word for a third question, (6) write a third question from the sentence using that word, (7) write an answer for that question using words in the sentence. If you cannot use words in the sentence to answer your question, write another question and/or keep trying until you have a question that can be answered with the words in the sentence. Remember, you are practicing to understand what is written, so your answers must use words in the sentence. In Selection II you will write both the questions and the answers. For both selections you will want to keep words such as what, when, who, where, how, why and did in mind as you write your questions. These words will help you to begin your thinking about questions.

Now, practice understanding what is written by working through Selections I and II.

SELECTION I

The Workshop

I saw an announcement in the newspaper about an adult workshop.

a. What did I see in the newspaper?
   an announcement

b. Where was the announcement?

c. What

In the workshop adults are going to find out how to save money.

a. Who is the workshop for?
   adults
b. Where will adults find out about saving money?

They will be given information about how to invest their money.

a. What will tell them how to invest their money?
   information

b. What will the information tell them?

c. Who

One workshop leader will talk about how to borrow money.

a. Who will we learn about borrowing money from?
   workshop leader

b. Who will talk about borrowing money?

c. What

There is one catch, it will cost you some money to attend.

a. What is the catch?
   it will cost

b. How many catches are there?

c. What

It seems as if you always have to spend money to find out how to save money.

a. When does it seem as if you have to spend money to save money?
   always

b. Why do you need to spend money?

c. What
SELECTION II

Snow Removal

My friend telephoned me this morning to get the snow removal report.

a. 

b. 

c. 

Last night's news report said that we would have three inches of snow, but not to worry because the snow removal crew would have the streets clear before morning.

a. 

b. 

c. 

Well, sure enough we had our three inches of snow, but we did not have clear streets.

a. 

b. 

c. 

Our cars were stalled in the snow, the school bus couldn't take the children to school and I was a wreck.

a. 

b. 

c. 

Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

My friend suggested that we telephone the mayor for help.

a. 

b. 

c. 

Maybe she could call some of the city workers that are connected with the snow removal crew and get them to our street quickly.

a. 

b. 

c. 

We want you to practice some more with understanding what is written. So, now we want you to select any newspaper article, magazine article or textbook passage that you want to read. Take the first six sentences. Write those sentences on paper with spaces between them. Next, write three questions for each sentence. Remember to use what, when, who, where, why, how and did, to help you think of questions. Also, remember that the questions you write in this exercise should only be answered by the words in the sentences.

SELF-CHECK

a. Did you find words in the sentences to answer all of the questions in Selection I? Yes____ No____

b. Did you find words in the sentences to answer all of your questions in Selection II? Yes____ No____

c. Did you find words in the six sentences to answer all of your questions in the newspaper article, magazine article or textbook passage? Yes____ No____
DISCUSSION AND PRACTICE

Here you will continue to practice your skill of understanding sentences. In Part I we have written the first question and answer for you. In Part II you will write the questions and answers.

You know that asking questions is not always easy. So remember to use the words: what, when, who, where, why, how and did in your questions. Try these words in front of different parts of the sentence, then, try them as you think about the whole sentence. Another way to write questions is to write a statement and leave a blank space for the answer to be filled in. If you cannot think of a who, what, why, and so on question, write a statement and leave a blank space for the answer. The important thing for you to remember is that you are understanding what is written when you can ask questions about it. This practice will help you think about what you read.

Begin by reading the sentence, then read the question and answer that are written. Next, reread the sentence, think about words like who, what, why, and so on. Think of a question, write the question and check your question. You should be able to answer your question with words in the sentence. Write your answer. Write as many additional questions and answers as you need to understand the sentence. Continue working this way throughout Part I. In Part II you will write as many questions and answers as you need to understand the sentence.

Part I

1. The United States of America's national anthem was written by Francis Scott Key as he watched the battle that took place in Baltimore between the British and the Americans.

   a. Who wrote the national anthem?
      Francis Scott Key

   b. ____________________________

   c. ____________________________

   d. ____________________________

   e. ____________________________

2. Usually we think of elevators as small rooms that move up and down in tall buildings carrying people, but elevators are also huge bins that are used for storing wheat.
Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

a. How do we usually think of elevators?
   as small rooms

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

3. The history of spoons is almost as old as the history of knives with the notable difference being that the first spoons were probably sea shells and the first knives were made from pieces of bone, thin stones and sharp shells.
   a. What were the first spoons?
      probably sea shells
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

4. The katydid is an insect that has feelers, two large eyes, black holes for ears, six legs and wings that look like green leaves.
   a. What is a katydid?
      an insect
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 

5. It was not Mark's style to debate the fresh water issue in his office during business hours; he chose to invite the senators to his home for cocktails, dinner and a debating session.
   a. What was not Mark's style?
      to debate during business hours
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

6. By the end of the day our lobbyist had grown weary of the senators' filibustering, so he motioned for our group to follow him out of the historic building.
   a. What time of day was it?
      end of the day
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

Part II

1. We value limestone because it can be used to fertilize soil, as a substance in making concrete blocks, as a substance in making iron and steel and to improve rubber goods.
   a. 

Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

2. In the 1800’s fuel burned in oil lamps was extracted from hog fat, whale blubber, vegetables and nuts.
   a. 
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

3. The scientist found that by frequently modifying his environment he was able to succeed with his project.
   a. 
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

4. Reproduction is the part of the life cycle of human beings that prevents their extinction from this planet.
5. Several television programs planned for the unemployed were axed before airing because the test audience revealed that unemployed people would not find the programs satisfying.
   a. 
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 

6. The use of plastic is so extensive in our lives that I wonder if any of us have ever imagined a life without plastic.
   a. 
   b. 
   c. 
   d. 
   e. 
SELF-CHECK

a. Did you write questions and answers for Part I? Yes No

b. Did you write questions and answers for Part II? Yes No

c. Did you find words in the sentences to answer all of your questions in Part I? Yes No

d. Did you find words in the sentences to answer all of your questions in Part II? Yes No
DISCUSSION AND PRACTICE

Here you are going to continue to write questions to show that you understand the direct meaning of what was written. Notice that you have been given two sentences. You should write as many questions about the sentences as you need to understand the sentences. We are giving you two sentences because we want you to begin to think about longer readings and to ask yourself questions about them.

The next step is for you to organize your questions and answers, so that you can remember what you read. You know that you read to find out something. After you find the information, you need to remember it. The following example will show you the steps for organizing yourself so that you can remember what you read more easily.

Step 1
Read the following sentences.
As a learner I must accept some of the responsibility for my learning. I should commit myself to studying a reasonable number of hours each day, following directions in my book as well as those given by my instructor, asking questions when directions are unclear and keeping a record of my daily progress.

Step 2
Write questions and their answers. (Questions should be written so that words from the sentences can be used to answer them.)

a. What must I accept some responsibility for?
   my learning

b. How long should I study?
   a reasonable number of hours

c. What directions should I follow?
   directions in my book directions given by my instructor

d. What should I keep a record of?
   my daily progress

e. When should I ask questions?
   when directions are unclear

Step 3
Organize to remember. (Questions and answers from Step 2 are used.) The questions and answers are put together in fewer words and rearranged in a logical order so that they make sense.
Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

From Step 2a—I should accept some responsibility for my learning.
From Step 2b—I should study a reasonable number of hours.
From Step 2c—I should follow directions.

Note: The order of items d and e from Step 2 has been rearranged so that they present a logical order. When you think about items d and e you know that you will ask questions before you record your daily progress.

From Step 2e—I should ask questions.
From Step 2d—I should keep a record of my daily progress.

Work through the following sentences by reading the sentences, writing questions and answers and organizing those questions and answers to improve your memory.

1. Step 1—Read the sentences.
Competence in reading for adults may be reading well enough to function at a level that is satisfactory for us. This implies that competence for us, depending on our goal, may not be the same as for other adults.

Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

Step 3—Organize to remember.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

2. Step 1—Read the sentences.
An advanced level reader may be one who can read most material written for the general adult population. This reader will use tools that include dictionaries, thesauruses, almanacs and encyclopedias.
Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

Step 3—Organize to remember.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

3. Step 1—Read the sentences.
Critical reading is a practical skill. If we are not critical readers we can be misled by skilled writers who set out to distort information that could lead us to buy unnecessary products, vote for undesired candidates and support unprincipled causes.

Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 
Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

4. Step 1—Read the sentences.
When your reading brings you new information, you need to ask yourself if you already know anything about it. By asking that question you help yourself decide to spend more time studying what you need to learn and less time reviewing familiar information.

Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

Step 3—Organize to remember.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

5. Step 1—Read the sentences.
As an adult reader, you bring to reading a considerable amount of experience. This experience can be used as you work to increase your skill in reading.

Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

Thinking Strategies

6. Step 1—Read the sentences. Jenny provided written information about her study-reading habits on a form. During a conference with her instructor, she described herself as a 35-year-old housewife who had attended school through her sophomore year of college.

Step 2—Write questions and their answers.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

Step 3—Organize to remember.

a. 

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

SELF-CHECK

a. Did you write questions and their answers for each set of sentences?
   Yes_____ No_____.

b. Did you find words in the sentences to answer all of your questions?
   Yes_____ No_____.

c. Did you organize your questions and answers so that you could remember what you read? Yes_____ No_____.

Now that you have finished this Sentence Parts chapter you should be able to ask many questions about what you read. You are ready to select anything that you would enjoy reading. So, select something. Make sure that it has at least forty sentences. Read the first half of your selected reading. Do not ask yourself questions as you read. Afterward, write or tell about what you have read. Next, read the second half of your selected reading. As you read, write questions and their answers for every four sentences, or, as often as you need to clarify the meaning. Afterward, write or tell about what you have read. Our guess is that you will know more about those sentences where you asked yourself questions. Stop here and do your reading.

Were we right about you knowing more about the second half of the selection than the first half? Yes_____ No_____. Can you explain what happened?

EVALUATION

When you read you interact with the writer’s written language. You ask questions about the written language. You may clarify some of your thinking about what the writer has written. You may speculate about what the writer meant but did not say. You may accept or reject what the writer has written. You may memorize and use the content of what was written. All of this shows that you have gained some understanding of the writer’s message.

At the end of each chapter you will find three evaluation selections. The following selections, each written at a different level of difficulty, have been designed to help you keep track of your progress. You can do this by reading and circling the words that make the reading make sense. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Whenever your score is 21 or more, it means that you are progressing very well with your reading.

Whenever you come to the three evaluation selections in the remaining chapters, you are to read and circle the words that make the reading make sense. Always, begin with the first selection; complete that selection before reading Selection II. Complete Selection II before reading Selection III. After you have finished reading the first selection check your answers, count the number right and record your score. Follow the same steps for Selections II and III as you did for Selection I.
Selection I

My Dream House

Six years ago I began saving money for my dream house. I calculated, to the nearest green dollar, the amount of money I would need for an down payment on my dream house. I also calculated the amount of money I dance save each month for sick years. The amount saved would be enough for my void payment. The first two days I saved my money easily. The third year could not save as much mellow because of the rising cost of living. I started to wonder if we would ever get my house. The end of the fifth year I had saved less than the fourth year. "Time to panic," I said to myself. So, I did.

For two weeks I was so depressed that I went to see a psychologist. My first visit to the psychologist helped me to feel better. So I made another appointment before leaving his office. Two days later I received his bill. I paid the bill. On the third day I telephoned and cancelled my next appointment. The psy-
The psychologist's receptionist asked me why I was cancelling the appointment. I told her that I was saving money for a house. Further, I said that I could not save money and pay the psychologist at the same time. You know, after making that decision I felt much better. I now have my house and I am pleased with it. I am also pleased with myself for making that wise decision.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your score is __________
Selection II

Miss Liberty

If you have never visited the Statue of Liberty you may consider doing so one day. It is the United Catch of America's symbol for landed and democ-
carriages minded racy. The Statue saw a 100th anniversary present from France to the United States.

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.

boil friendly

Eulogy he

The Statue of Liberty weighs 225 tons and it stands 151 feet tall. A gift to
carriages freedom seems to

boil friendly gift classmates

boil freedom appears. Although it was a cope it seemed to strengthen friendship between the
classmates.

bog United States or France.
Selection III

Reading

Reading is one of the basic communicative skills that requires thinking.
Reading is difficult to define. Thinking is difficult to give. For our purposes about it we here we will consider thinking as an self-examination process that this utilize a of as we read.

Ever underneath of Even though researchers have not pronounced the problem of definition on They resolved it to could reading, we think that if you recognize some basic games of the reading process or aspects you tendency at: I will have a clearer understanding of reading. Two aspects in: (1) when you the promote are:

interact seen read you tingle with language that has been written; (2) when you interact prompt from they comprehend interacted. written language, you should acclaim what the writer has written. with dream song. beside writer's understand outside problems.

That do with Most people read without giving less thought to how they call it. To them, Are much for at if you

"What is reading?" is a question to little concern. However when yet are learn-

Chapter 2. Understanding Written Information

According to read better, it is not unusual for you to ask the question, "What is reading?"

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is__________
THREE

Using Reading

Exercises C and H in Chapter 1 helped you to sort out some of your thinking about understanding what is written, understanding what might be suggested by what is written and using this understanding of what is written to solve problems.

In Chapter 2 you practiced understanding the direct meaning of what was written. That was one very necessary step in learning to read better. There are other steps. This chapter is designed to take you into the additional steps of reading between and beyond the lines. You will use what you learned in Chapter 2 to help you learn more about reading in this chapter. Reading the lines will help you understand what the writer says. Reading between the lines will help you understand what the writer may mean but does not say. Reading beyond the lines will help you use what you read to think about similar instances or to solve problems.

You make reading meaningful by understanding it and by using it. Chapter 2 provided you with practice in how to understand what is written. Up to this point you have asked yourself questions about groups of sentences. Well, it is still necessary for you to do that. In addition, it is necessary for you to think about what might be suggested by what is written in sentences.

In this chapter you will study and practice (1) how to understand what might be suggested by what is written and (2) how to use what is written in a meaningful way.

THINKING STRATEGIES: PART I

Exploring possibilities of what was not written but suggested, will give you a fuller picture of the writer’s message. For example: If someone said to me “Alice, that was
Chapter 3. Using Reading

a beautiful suit that you wore yesterday." I would say, "thank you." But, I might wonder what that person's thoughts are about what I am wearing today. You see that person spoke about the suit I wore yesterday. My thinking might be that my appearance must be awful today since nothing was said about the suit I am wearing today. Or, the person could have been telling me that I looked awful day-before-yesterday and all other days. You see, I would wonder why yesterday was singled out. I might convince myself that there is a message there that was not stated. Are you beginning to get the idea now, about what might be suggested from what is said?

Several ways to start thinking about what might be suggested but not written in sentences is to first understand the written sentence. (You practiced that in Chapter 2.) Next use your knowledge and experience, or, what you know about everyday life to help you think about what was not stated. Think with us as we list some possibilities of what might be suggested about the following sentence. Before thinking about what might be suggested about the sentence, use what you have practiced in Chapter 2 to understand the sentence. Remember to (1) ask questions about the sentence, (2) answer your questions and (3) organize your questions and answers so that you can remember the content of the sentence.

Take a minute to work through understanding the direct meaning of the following sentence using the steps listed above.

Sentence—She bought only two books.

Questions about the sentence Answers

Organize to remember

Now that you have taken time to work through understanding the direct meaning of the sentence, what might this sentence suggest? This sentence alone might suggest that:

a. She had money for only two books.
b. She needed only two books.
c. She could carry only two books.
d. She was told not to buy more than two books.
e. There were only two books in the store.
f. The store owner would sell her only two books.
g. She had time to shop for only two books.

This sentence in context (among other sentences) can offer clues that reveal the writer's intent. For example, "She rushed into the bookstore and hurriedly looked
might appear today. The possibilities suggested by that sentence were numerous when it stood alone. But a look at the context (surrounding sentences) reduced the number of logical choices and moved us closer to the writer's intended meaning. The context helped to tell us what the writer meant.

Think about what we did to read between the lines. First, we thought about the girl and some reasons she might have had for buying only two books. Then we thought about the store and the store owner. We considered how these might have kept her from buying additional books. Lastly, we thought about her time and how that might have kept her from shopping longer.

The context tells us that she was hurrying, so that one logical choice might be that "she had no time to buy other books." Another logical choice could be that "she found and bought the two books that she wanted during her ten minute stay in the store." Without additional clues in the context we are left with these two possibilities of what the writer meant.

The point is that if you want to read and fully understand the writer's message, you need to read between the lines by looking for hints or clues in the context that tell what the writer means but does not say directly.

You could have come up with the possibilities suggested because you have had shopping experiences. You may have been in a hurry at some time. When you think about real life possibilities that your reading suggests, you are bringing you and your experiences into your reading. When you do this you use what you already know to learn and understand more. Your past experience interacts with new information from the writer. When you actively encourage this interaction (asking questions and relating experiences), chances are that you will get more out of your reading.

Now, we want you to think with us about what might be suggested from the following sentence. First, understand the direct meaning of the sentence by asking yourself questions. Second, use your questions and answers to organize yourself (as you did in Chapter 2) and to memorize the content of the sentence. Third, think about what the sentence might suggest. For example:

Sentence—The dentist told me to use dental floss every day.

Questions about the sentence

a. What did the dentist tell me to use?

b. Who told me to use dental floss?

c. How often did he tell me to use dental floss?

d. What did the dentist do?

e. What did the dentist tell me to do with dental floss?

Answers
dental floss
the dentist
every day
told me
use dental floss

Organize to remember
the dentist
told me
use
dental floss
every day
Now what might this sentence suggest? It might suggest that:

a. He thought that I might have a lot of dental floss.
b. He thought I did not use dental floss often enough.
c. He thought that I knew how to use dental floss.
d. He thought that I might get cavities and flossing could prevent them.

Read with us that sentence in context to see if any of our earlier suggestions were true. (We will assume that you will remember to question yourself about those sentences used for the context, as well as, remember to use the organize-to-remember step, if necessary. The reason for using these steps is so that you understand directly what is written.) The sentence in context is as follows:

Last month when I visited the dentist for my annual checkup, he found food lodged between several of my teeth. He asked me about my brushing habits. I told him that I brushed daily, but there were occasions when I could not remove food from between two of my front teeth. The dentist told me to use dental floss every day. He assured me that it would help me to remove food from between my teeth.

Now, let us review or test out our earlier suggestions to see if any of them were true. The earlier suggestions were:

a. He thought that I might have a lot of dental floss.
b. He thought I did not use dental floss often enough.
c. He thought that I knew how to use dental floss.
d. He thought that I might get cavities and flossing could prevent them.

Some of our earlier suggestions fit the context (statements b and d) while others did not (statements a and c). This exercise shows that you can suggest or guess what the writer means from one sentence with some success. However, you are likely to be more successful in your guessing when you read other sentences in the context. Thoughtful guessing based on your experiences is a useful strategy. Such guessing shows that you are involved in making sense of the writer’s message. Remember, at times as you read, you will come upon a sentence that seems to suggest several possible meanings. One strategy to use is that of guessing and then examining the context for more information. The more information you get the more accurate your guesses become. Accurate guesses are likely to lead to a clearer understanding of what the writer means. This suggesting and guessing strategy helps you to read between the lines.

Thus far you have studied suggestions for understanding directly what is written and for reading between the lines. Another step is to read beyond the lines. When you read beyond the lines you use written information. Reading beyond the lines provides you with examples of how to solve problems.

Let’s reread the paragraph about the dentist.
Last month when I visited the dentist for my annual checkup, he found food lodged between several of my teeth. He asked me about my brushing habits. I told him that I brushed daily, but there were occasions when I could not remove food from between two of my front teeth. The dentist told me to use dental floss every day. He assured me that it would help me to remove food from between my teeth.

Does this paragraph remind you of anything; or can you do anything with that information? That paragraph reminded us that dentists encourage their patients to brush daily. Also, patients often have teeth that can trap food particles. It suggested that dental floss might help remove particles from between our teeth. In other words, we can use information in this paragraph to tell us more than what the words actually say.

The steps which you have covered thus far are (1) read the lines (understand directly what the writer means), (2) read between the lines (understand what the writer might have meant but did not say) and (3) read beyond the lines (use the writer's information).

You should be ready to work through these steps. You will begin with a sentence, then that sentence will appear in context. Use your practice experiences in Chapter 2 to help you think through this chapter.
**Meaning: Beginning Practice**

**PRACTICE**

You are to (1) read the lines (understand directly what the writer means), (2) read between the lines (understand what the writer might have meant but did not say), and (3) read beyond the lines (use the writer's information). You will practice Step 3 after you have read the sentence in context.

1. **Sentence**—On Friday Mike received a telephone call from the store manager telling him that he had won $100.

   **Questions about the sentence**
   
   **Answers**

   **Organize to remember**
   
   **What sentence might suggest**

**Sentence in context**

On his way home from work Mike stopped at the grocery store. As he entered the store he noticed a box just inside the door. Above the box was a sign that stated: “Fill out the form and drop in box.” Mike filled out the form, dropped it in the box, and forgot about it. On Friday Mike received a telephone call from the store manager telling him that he had won $100.

**Which suggestions were accurate?**

**Use of context**

a. **Does this remind you of a similar incident?** Yes____ No____ If yes, describe it.

b. **Is this useful information to you?** Yes____ No____ If yes, tell how.

2. **Sentence**—Her first paycheck in hand, Beth walked slowly toward the waiting car.
Chapter 3. Using Reading

Questions about the sentence | Answers

Organize to remember | What sentence might suggest

Sentence in context

Beth worked hard all week; she was eager to show that she deserved her new job. Her brother had promised to pick her up after work and take her to the bank to open a new savings account. He watched her face as she walked toward him opening the envelope. He saw the disappointment on her face. Her first paycheck in hand, Beth walked slowly toward the waiting car. As she got in, she cried. “At this rate, it will take me ten years to save up for my own car.”

Which suggestions were accurate?

Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____. If yes, describe it.

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____. If yes, tell how.

3. Sentence—She read the teacher’s note on the paper and quickly left the classroom.

Questions about the sentence | Answers

Organize to remember | What sentence might suggest
Thinking Strategies

Sentence in context

Mrs. Green, the teacher's assistant, heard a loud noise in the classroom at the end of the hall. She walked quickly from her hall post to the room. The teacher was holding a child on her lap who had obviously been hurt. The teacher quickly took the paper that Mrs. Green handed her and wrote a note asking that someone call a doctor. She read the teacher's note on the paper and quickly left the classroom. Most of the children in the room were so absorbed in their assignments that they continued to work undisturbed.

Which suggestions were accurate?

Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes_____ No_____. If yes, describe it.

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes_____ No_____. If yes, tell how.
Meaning: Advanced Practice

PRACTICE

Continue to practice (1) reading the lines, (2) reading between the lines and (3) reading beyond the lines. Remember to practice Step 3 after you have read the sentence in context.

1. Sentence—Their groups are mutual aid societies for working on common problems and the promotion of common interests.

Questions about the sentence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Organize to remember

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What sentence might suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Sentence in context

As the children move about their neighborhood, they band together because they need each other. Their groups are mutual aid societies for working on common problems and the promotion of common interests. Such groups provide fun and adventure to offset an oppressive boredom, as well as protection from what they feel is an uncaring and hostile world.¹

Which suggestions were accurate?

Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____. If yes, describe it.

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____. If yes, tell how.

Chapter 3. Using Reading

2. Sentence—Parents usually had total authority regarding the education of their children and in most cases were seen by the rest of the community as intelligent adults in their own right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions about the sentence</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Organize to remember

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What sentence might suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Sentence in context

Historically, the family unit has always been the prime source of education for its members. Early American settlers, who had no other choice, taught their own children the necessary academic skills for social (and religious) survival. . . . Parents usually had total authority regarding the education of their children and in most cases were seen by the rest of the community as intelligent adults in their own right. In other words, community adults who had children supported each other in the task of educating the young people of their community.2

Which suggestions were accurate?

Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes___ No____ If yes, describe it__________________________

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____ If yes, tell how.

3. Sentence—Parents should take every opportunity to read to children the books which are of interest to the children but which are too difficult for their developed reading skills.

### Questions about the sentence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Organize to remember

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What sentence might suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Sentence in context

Probably all parents have heard that it is good for them to set an example for their children. In reading, parental example can be one of reading for enjoyment. The child who from his earliest years notices that both parents seem to enjoy spending portions of their leisure time reading can develop a favorable attitude toward reading before entering school. Parents should take every opportunity to read to children the books which are of interest to the children but which are too difficult for their developed reading skills.²

#### Which suggestions were accurate?

#### Use of context

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____. If yes, describe it.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____. If yes, tell how.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Meaning: Challenging Practice

#### PRACTICE

Continue to practice to (1) read the lines, (2) read between the lines and (3) read beyond the lines. Step 3 should be practiced after you have read the sentence in context.

1. **Sentence**—Some types of mnemonics are very simple while others are complex.

#### Questions about the sentence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions about the sentence</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Organize to remember

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What sentence might suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Sentence in context

Various devices and systems can be used to help learn and retain information from reading. These systems and devices are called mnemonics. Some types of mnemonics are very simple while others are complex. Examples of simple mnemonics are rhymes, such as the one beginning "Thirty days hath September," which helps people remember the number of days in each month. Similar rhymes can be used in foreign language learning.

Which suggestions were accurate?

---

#### Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____. If yes, describe it.

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____. If yes, tell how.

---

Chapter 3. Using Reading

2. Sentence—Whenever people move to a new location, their language changes as it adapts to new situations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions about the sentence</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Organize to remember</td>
<td>What sentence might suggest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three factors explain language change. The first is normal variation, which occurs as new ideas and inventions develop and enter into language. The second factor is geographic change. Whenever people move to a new location, their language changes as it adapts to new situations. The third factor is the importation of foreign words and expressions. When languages meet, their speakers and writers exchange words, thereby enriching both languages.5

Which suggestions were accurate?

Use of context

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____ If yes, describe it.

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____ If yes, tell how.

3. Sentence—Clearly their performance is limited by factors such as size, but the computers actually do depend on how they are programmed, that is, upon the use made of their capacity.

5Jean Malmstrom, Understanding Language: A Primer for the Language Arts Teacher (New York, St. Martin's Press, 1977), p. 58
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions about the sentence</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organize to remember</th>
<th>What sentence might suggest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Sentence in context**

Differences between individuals in capacity to remember largely depends . . . on how the system is used. For an analogy, consider two computers of the same make and model. Clearly their performance is limited by factors such as size, but the computers actually do depend on how they are programmed, that is, upon the use made of their capacity. Similarly in human memory, what a person can recall depends on what is stored, and the efficiency of storage in turn relies on the manner in which information has been arranged and organized.

Which suggestions were accurate? ____________________________________________

**Use of context**

a. Does this remind you of a similar incident? Yes____ No____. If yes, describe it. ____________________________________________________________

b. Is this useful information to you? Yes____ No____ If yes, tell how. ________________________________________________________________

---

Another way to help yourself read the lines, read between the lines and read beyond
the lines is for you to ask yourself questions about who, what, where, and so on in
different ways. It is necessary for you to have different approaches for understanding
written language because writers write for different purposes. Likewise, you read for
different purposes. Since you read for different purposes, you will often have to
organize or group that information in a way that is suitable to your purpose for
reading. You may have to look for things that are alike, things that are different and
for the order in which things occur.

In your everyday life you notice things are alike or similar and things that are
different, as well as when or how things occur. You compare things to see their
likenesses or similarities and their differences. While shopping you may notice the
order as well as the appearance of what you purchase. The order for shopping for
milk would be to (1) go in the store, (2) select the kind of milk you want, (3) pay for
the milk and (4) leave the store. In terms of appearance, as you shopped for milk
you noticed that many milk cartons were the same size. But, the words and colors
on some of the cartons were different from others. Likewise, expensive designer
jeans are different from the less expensive jeans, even though both are jeans. The
material in silk shirts is different from that in cotton shirts. However, they are alike
in that both are shirts. Shirts are different from jeans, but both are items of clothing.
Clothing is different from milk.

Read the following selections. As you read, look for similarities, differences,
and order.

**Similarities, Differences and Order**

1. Thanksgiving dinner was prepared for me by my sweetheart. I
prepared Christmas dinner for my sweetheart.

What are some similarities?

a. dinners were prepared

b. sweethearts prepared the dinners

What are some differences?

a. the time that the dinners were prepared

b. a different sweetheart prepared each dinner

2. Jackhammers were in motion on the street in front of my house
when I went downstairs to my kitchen for my morning coffee.
Just as I opened the cupboard, the sound and vibrations from
the jackhammers knocked my coffee to the floor. Needless to
say, I started my morning without my coffee.
Thinking Strategies

List in order three things that happened after I arrived in my kitchen.

a. **I opened the cupboard.**

b. **My coffee fell to the floor.**

c. **I started my morning without coffee.**

Studying written language this way gives you another way to group (put together) written language in a way that is easy to understand and remember. Read the following selections and respond to the questions.

1. I thought I was a fortunate person until I went to Ms. Jones’ class. I was full of charm, had a pleasing personality, lots of friends and owned my own car. A classmate of mine, who shall remain nameless, matched me in that she was full of charm, had lots of friends, but she outranked me with her mink coat with matching leather accessories that she wore on the first day of class.

What are some similarities?

a. 

b. 

What are some differences?

a. 

b. 

2. Sometimes I think reading is like visiting with friends. At times I visit them for fun and other times I visit them because I want them to help me solve a problem. I read for those same reasons. Also, I read when I want to be alone. You see I can take a trip in my rocking chair, enjoy it, return home then tell my friends about it.

What are some similarities?

a. 

b. 

What are some differences?

a. 

b. 

3. Hearing the same story reported by people from various perspectives can be quite a lesson in critical listening. While words naming persons, places, things and acts may be similar, words describing them may differ. And, descriptive words can make one story sound like several vastly different ones.

Note the following examples of the remarks made about a father winning custody of his children. The father himself says proudly, “I have won custody of my wonderful children.” His mother reports that, “My son, a long-suffering and caring father finally won custody of his children.” His ex-wife insists...
that her children's "Johnny-come-lately father unfairly won custody of the children." The current girlfriend of the father sighs and says that, "He unfortunately won custody of his undisciplined children." The children smile uncertainly and assert that, "Our father won us in a custody battle."

The choice of descriptive words used by the speakers seemed to have presented the speakers' emotional involvement with the custody battle. You, the listener, then may have to (1) listen thoughtfully, (2) determine what the speakers' biases are and (3) figure out what really happened. Were the speakers speaking because they loved the children, they hated the father, they hated the children, or they loved the father? You, the listener, may have to answer such questions in order to understand why the speakers spoke as they did.

What are some of the similarities in the remarks made about the custody case?

a. 

b. 

What are some differences in the remarks made about the custody case?

a. 

b. 

List two things that listeners must be aware of while listening critically.

a. 

b. 

List, in order, factors that you should consider when listening critically.

a. 

b. 

For additional practice of looking for similarities, differences and order in written language, select an article from the sports section of any newspaper. Make sure that the article has three paragraphs or more. Read those three paragraphs or more. As you read notice the things that happened. Look for those things that are similar, those things that are different and look for the order in which things occurred. Read the article a second time. As you read practice identifying similarities, differences and order of occurrence by listing them in the following columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What things are similar?</th>
<th>What things are different?</th>
<th>What is the order of occurrence?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You will continue to practice your reading skills through the Understanding Reading chart. This chart offers you a concise way of taking notes about your reading as you read the lines, read between the lines and read beyond the lines.

At the top of the chart you will find four different paragraphs or passages. (1) Read the first passage. (2) Read the first question and the response about passage one. (3) Read the second question and the second response about the first passage. (4) Continue in this manner until you have read all questions and all responses to the first passage. (5) Read the second passage. (6) Follow the same steps to complete the second passage as you did for the first. (7) Follow those same steps for the third and the fourth passages. (8) Reread the entire chart so that you will become more familiar with how to use the chart. Now read through the chart with us.

Take time to practice using the chart. We have inserted short passages and charts with blank spaces for your practice. (1) Read the first passage. (2) Reread the passage and write responses to the nine questions. The response to your first question is your main idea or theme of the passage. It tells you what the focus of your passage is about. Therefore, you may answer that question by indicating that each sentence or each paragraph refers to certain persons, ideas or things. The second question asks for details about the persons, ideas, or things. The third question asks you to think beyond what was written and indicate what the writer could have meant. The fourth question asks you to compare or recognize those things that were similar. The fifth question asks you to consider how things were listed, what was first, second, and so on. The sixth question asks you to consider if some things made other things happen. The seventh question asks you to look for examples that help to explain ideas. The eighth question asks you to consider why the passage was written. When you think about why something is written you are better able to put it in context. The ninth question asks you if you can use the information. Overall, these nine questions will help you to group information from passages so that you can better understand and remember the content of passages. (3) Reread your responses. Your responses may serve as your notes about the passage.

Read the second passage and follow the same steps that you followed for the first passage.
### UNDERSTANDING READING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage 1</th>
<th>Passage 2</th>
<th>Passage 3</th>
<th>Passage 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. What or who is it about?</strong></td>
<td>Newspapers help people who are new to the city learn their way around. They run ads that tell where to buy, sell or rent things. Jobs are listed there and they tell people where to go for fun.</td>
<td>Magazine ads play a major role in the nation's spending habits. When a product is heavily advertised in magazines, its sales often increase dramatically. Products not heavily advertised run the risk of being left on the shelf. Magazine ads can make a real difference in sales.</td>
<td>As Mary and Paul walked along the beach they held hands and talked quietly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. What was said about it or them?</strong></td>
<td>Each sentence refers to how newspapers help people.</td>
<td>Products that are advertised in magazines sell; products not heavily advertised are left on the shelf.</td>
<td>The sentence is about Mary and Paul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. What might have been meant?</strong></td>
<td>Newspapers help new city dwellers: learn their way around, by listing jobs, by running ads, by telling where to go for fun.</td>
<td>Products advertised in magazines are likely to sell well, products not advertised may not.</td>
<td>They walked down the beach holding hands and talking quietly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. Were things compared? What things?</strong></td>
<td>Newspapers are helpful to people who are new to the city.</td>
<td>Products advertised in magazine ads and products not advertised in magazine ads.</td>
<td>Mary and Paul were good friends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Were things listed? What was listed?</td>
<td>Yes Ads Jobs Places for fun</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Did some things seem to make others happen? What were they?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes Advertising in magazine ads seems to make people buy.</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Were things explained with examples?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Was the purpose for writing to: a. convince you? b. inform you? c. entertain you?</td>
<td>No Yes No</td>
<td>Yes Yes No</td>
<td>No Yes No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Can you use the information? How?</td>
<td>Yes To help you if you are a newcomer in the city.</td>
<td>Yes To determine the usefulness of ads in selling products.</td>
<td>Yes If you are looking for ways to become diet-conscious you might consider eating less meat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PASSAGE I

I am sure that you have heard many people say something like, “My mother always used to say...” Well, I am going to share something with you that my mother used to say to me. She would say, “Think before you speak.” I consider that to be excellent advice. That advice has sustained me through many important intellectual and social meetings.

PASSAGE II

The talk show host left his audience laughing at the end of each show. He would begin a joke at the start of the show and continue it as he talked with each guest. By the end of the evening everyone could and did say the punchline.

UNDERSTANDING READING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Passage I</th>
<th>Passage II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What or who is it about?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. What was said about it or them?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. What might have been meant?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Where things compared? What things?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Were things listed? What was listed?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PASSAGE III

Two Cities I Love

I feel quite lucky today as I stare at the softly falling snow through my bedroom window. I am reminded that I have lived in two cities that I grew to love very much. The cities are located in two very different parts of the country. When I was a young girl growing up and going to school, I lived in Columbia, South Carolina. The climate there is semitropical and the weather varies from warm to hot except for a short winter season. Therefore, most of the time I wore lightweight, colorful clothes. And though my parents bought me a warm winter coat each year, I seldom got to wear it.

When I was sixteen years old, I moved to Boston. The weather here changes with the seasons. While summers are warm, winters are almost always cold and snowy. My clothes change with the season. Most of them are woolen, warm and snuggly. I am beginning to enjoy the cold winters especially when it snows and everything is hushed-white and beautiful. Yet, at unexpected times, I find myself longing for the warmth that only a southern sun can bring.
PASSAGE IV

My Snow Blower

It has been assumed that television viewing may affect your behavior. I had heard this assumption but did not believe it until I purchased a snow blower. I am sure you are wondering about the connection between watching television and purchasing a snow blower. Well, have you ever thought about how convincing commercials are? After watching a number of commercials about snow blowers for a period of time, it seemed to me that I could not do without a snow blower any longer. So, one day I had my friend drive me to the store where I purchased a snow blower just like the one I had seen in the commercials. By now, you are probably saying to yourself that this is not unusual behavior. Many people purchase items after watching commercials. However, many people do not purchase snow blowers when they are visiting friends who live in a snowy region and they live in an area where it rarely snows.

Presently, my snow blower is serving as a "beware of commercials" reminder. And it's a nice reminder. You see, I have had it now for a number of snowless winters. It has not been used to remove any snow yet because we have not had any snow to remove. I have been thinking about dismantling it and using some of the parts in my flower garden. There, among my flowers, it should become an attractive reminder.

UNDERSTANDING READING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. What or who is it about?</th>
<th>Passage III</th>
<th>Passage IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. What was said about it or them?</th>
<th>Passage III</th>
<th>Passage IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>3. What might have been meant?</th>
<th>Passage III</th>
<th>Passage IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. Where things compared? What things?</th>
<th>Passage III</th>
<th>Passage IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Thus far you have been studying and practicing how to interact with the writer’s written language. You have studied and practiced how to read the lines, read between the lines and read beyond the lines.

The following selections, written at varying levels of difficulty, have been designed to help you keep track of your reading progress. You can do this by reading and circling the words that make the reading make sense. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Whenever your score is 21 or more, it means that you are progressing very well with your reading.

After you have finished reading the selections, check your answers, count the number of correct choices and record your score at the bottom of the page. Remember to stop after each selection, check your answers and record your score.
Suppose you are standing on a pier and you see a child fall off the pier into the water, or, you see a person in trouble in the water. What should you do? You should call loudly for help. If possible, send someone nearby to get help.

Meanwhile do not jump into the water to try to save the person. Even trained lifeguards have been pulled under water by struggling persons whom they were trying to save. By jumping in you risk your own life and you may ruin any chance of saving the person you are trying to help.

If the person is near the shore or pier, lie down and try to grab his clothing and pull him to safety. Make sure you are anchored well enough to avoid being pulled in yourself.

If other person is too far around for you to extend water to him, throw aid out already.

Evaluation

Chapter 3. Using Reading

something for keep him afloat. Use nothing that floats, such as the life preserver, to yourself a
the take
a beachball, long oar, a rubber tire, or a slab of wood.
an nor
they falls side
If cattle are boating and someone shore overboard, throw him a tiny jacket, you sinks life
not swim him
if he is known wearing one. If there find no life jackets, throw those anything ever
it the nine
that floats. Pull fish to the side of store boat. Let him hang into the side of the him one onto
boat until he can pull himself into the boat. It is always a good practice when

you go boating to wear a life jacket.

Never try to swim to shore if your boat overturns. Hang on to the boat until help arrives. Even expert swimmers have been overcome by exhaustion while

trying to reach shore.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is__________.
To Your Health*

You are better off avoiding disease and its damage when possible. It is recom-
mended that you strive for the best of health. Don't count on being rescued at
the brink.

The costs of treating illnesses are continuing to climb. There is also in-
creasing evidence that many of the most devastating diseases—including

softly go ever,
shock attack and stroke—can be avoided through preventive health for, if
heart be and,
controlled,
contracted, can be quality,
modified and even, in no cases, overcome.
mixed,
some

Preventive medicine has just begun to emerge in a major field.

Emotion, for whole
Sincerely, doctors have been caring with the sick as their sum responsibility;
Historically, in even
besides, contact
more and more, now, they are concentrating on modifying well-being.
time, fostering
cr is yourself try
How can you practice preventive medicine on time and, it is to trial
service parties be
hoped, avoid disease? In three ways: through diet, learning for to live with
when
several before
stress both on the job and two home, and through exercise.

Some impressive, help
Who you eat—and, more important, what you fail to cook—is vital. Nutri-
What when, eat
tionists, in talkative, agree that the best person is high in fiber, moderate in protein
general, from either

difficult
either

tionists, in talkative, agree that the best person is high in fiber, moderate in protein
general, from either

and low for sugar, fat, and salt. High-fiber foods include bran and other whole grains, raw fruits and vegetables. Carbohydrates such as potatoes and rice are also important supplements. Cut down on highly concentrated proteins such as red meat and decrease reliance on processed foods. Limit the amount of coffee and tea you drink daily. Studies have linked caffeine to increased stress—another significant factor in many diseases.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is_________________.
There is an old Scottish legend that states that those who have seen the green flash will never err in matters of love. Reason enough, surely, to look for the phenomenon. Occasionally, as the sun is setting or rising, a momentary flash of green light can be seen at the top of the sun. Arriving quite unexpect-

for comply edly for most people, it seems to contradict normal convenience that the low experience she has

sun sit yellow or red.

is

the

As a sun’s light passes through or atmosphere, it is bent by refraction, of

this

has touching

so that when thing bottom of the sun top seen to be just testing the horizon, the

is

surely

herself

tis

the sun itself is actually already below welt. Its image, however, smoothly

saw

sun been displaced upward. Red box is refracted less than up light, so that has

miss on

when top low sun is examined wonder a telescope, it can be seen to have a the through

red

so low

is

side rim on the bottom on a blue rim on his top. Usually, the blue has lost by been and the set

sun

and

club

scattering as most travels through the atmosphere, if so a green upper err is it can smooth rim seen instead (green is next to blue in the spectrum). Under collect conditions, normal

Chapter 3. Using Reading

In this green rim is so very thin that it is too small for the unaided eye to detect, it
but under the appropriate mirage conditions, it can sometimes be so greatly
magnified that it becomes arrestingly obvious.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is
In Chapter 1, Exercises I, J, K and L, you found out some of what you know about word parts. Some questions that you may ask yourself are: (1) Do I recognize and know the meanings of some prefixes? (2) Do I recognize and know the meanings of some roots? (3) Do I recognize and know the meanings of some suffixes? (4) Do I have a strategy for helping myself pronounce words? (5) Do I combine what I know about word parts to help me recognize unfamiliar words? This chapter will provide you with some discussion and practice related to those questions. This chapter provides study and practice for learning to (1) recognize and figure out the meanings of prefixes, (2) recognize and figure out the meanings of roots, (3) recognize and figure out the meanings of suffixes and (4) pronounce words.

THINKING STRATEGIES

One item on the Study Reading Behaviors form in Chapter 1 asked you to tell what you did when you came to words that you did not know. Chances are you already do some of what we suggest as practice for you. If you did not cite any of what we suggest, then you will have an opportunity to practice new ways of pronouncing words.

As an advanced reader you can pronounce words in a way that helps you understand their meanings in the total context. When you can say a word you can think about whether or not you have heard that word before. You can think about what it meant to you when you heard it. Then you can think about what that word
means where you now find it. Thus, using strategies for pronouncing words can aid in understanding what you read if the word you are trying to pronounce is one you have heard before in a meaningful context.

One resource that you will want to keep close at hand when you read is your dictionary. If you do not have one you should purchase one to help you (1) learn the various meanings of words you need to know, (2) discover the spelling of words you need to spell and (3) determine the pronunciation of words you need to say. In addition it should have large enough print so you can read it without eyestrain and should be sturdy so that you can handle it frequently.

Finding Words in the Dictionary

Let us assume that you do not know how to pronounce the word crash. In this case you would take your dictionary, open it and look for the guide words at the top of the page. (Guide words are those words printed in dark print or bold-face type at the top of the page. Usually, there are two words at the top of each page. The first guide word on the left is usually the first entry word—word written with meanings—written on the page and the second guide word is usually the last entry word on the page.) If, after opening your dictionary, you find that your guide words begin with the letter b then you will have to turn to the section that begins with the letter c. When you turn to the c section in your dictionary, look at the guide words. You are looking for the word crash. So you will look through the guide words until you come to the letters c r a in a guide word, then c r a in a guide word. If you find that there is a guide word to the left of the page that begins with the letters c r a f and the next word begins with the letters c r e, that tells you that crash can be found on that page because c r a s in the word crash comes after c r a f and before c r e. Look down the columns of words on that page until you come to the word crash.

Pronouncing the Word

Finding the word in the dictionary is the first step. The second step is to pronounce the word crash. After entry words in the dictionary you will find that the words have been rewritten and placed between two upright curved lines "( )" or between two slanted lines "\". (We will show the upright curved lines.) For example, after the word crash you will find (krash). k is used to tell you that the c in crash is pronounced as k. Above the a you will notice in some dictionaries a short half circle. That half circle means that the a should be pronounced a certain way. You will find out how to pronounce this a by using the pronunciation key in your dictionary. Usually the key is found in two places: at the beginning of the dictionary and at the bottom of pages in the dictionary. The pronunciation key may show the symbol a or d and a word that you can pronounce that has the same sound. This word is your key word. When you pronounce the key word, think about the sound that the a made. That sound is the sound that you will use when you pronounce the word crash (krash).

You have probably noticed that some words in the dictionary are written with spaces between some word parts. Spaces have been left between some of those word parts as a means of helping you to pronounce words. In other words, the words have
Thinking Strategies

been divided into smaller word parts so that you can pronounce them. For example, 
grade (grăd) is pronounced as a one-part word, while grad u ate (grăj'-52-5t') is 
pronounced as a three-part word. Notice the markings above the letters for both 
words. Remember that the pronunciation key will help you to determine the special 
sound of those letters. You may have noticed the marks after the j and t among 
the pronunciation symbols for graduate. They are aids for helping you pronounce words. 
Those marks tell you which word-parts to stress or accent as you pronounce the 
word. Word-parts marked with accent symbols are to be stressed when the word is 
spoken.

Dividing Words into Smaller Parts without the Use of the Dictionary

There will be times when you will want to pronounce words without first having to 
find them in the dictionary. When you can pronounce words independently it saves 
time and allows you to focus on the writer's message. Some general patterns that are 
helpful at times are, (1) Find the first vowel letter, (vowels are a, e, i, o, u and 
sometimes y) or vowel combination in a word and write the letter V over it. (2) Find 
the first consonant letter (all letters not vowels) or consonant combination and write 
the letter C over it. (3) Find the next vowel and write the letter V over it. Your 
completed general pattern should be VC V. For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{prey} & \quad \text{by} \\
\text{hes} & \quad \text{ven}
\end{align*}
\]

Another completed general pattern is VCCV as in

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bot} & \quad \text{tle}
\end{align*}
\]

The three general patterns are: (1) VC/V, (2) VC/V and (3) VC/CV. Notice that a line 
has been placed after the first V in pattern one; a line has been placed after the C in 
pattern two; and a line has been placed between the two CCs in pattern three. The 
line is there to tell you that the word should be divided at that point. (Note: Gener-
ally, an e at the end of a word should not be used as part of the pattern. You must 
always complete the pattern before dividing the word into parts.)

Read with us as we study patterns in words that commonly occur in written 
language. We will use the dictionary and other books or newspapers to help find 
words. You may do likewise. We will also look for patterns in words that contain 
consonant combinations and vowel combinations. Consonant combinations refer to 
such combinations as, th, ph, sh, cr, ch, sl and br. Vowel combinations refer to such 
combinations as: ea, oi, ee and oo. Words in which patterns occur are:

1. VC/V
   a. Some single consonants represent a single consonant sound:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{br} & \quad \text{con} \\
\text{vl} & \quad \text{rus} \\
\text{ts} & \quad \text{famous}
\end{align*}
\]

write your own word and divide it
Chapter 4. Tackling Unknown Words

b. Some consonant combinations represent a single sound. Examples are th, ph, ch:

- th:
  - machine
- ph:
  - whisper
- ch:
  - ashamed

Write your own word and divide it.

c. Some consonant combinations represent blended sounds. Examples are bl, br, cl, cr, dr, gl, gr, pl, pr, sp, spr, st, str, sl:

- bl:
  - blend
- br:
  - refresh
- cl:
  - giclee
- cr:
  - aghast
- dr:
  - glide
- gl:
  - grind
- gr:
  - aghast
- pl:
  - playlist
- pr:
  - aghast
- sp:
  - slice
- spr:
  - spice
- st:
  - stifle
- str:
  - stifle
- sl:
  - alike

Write your own word and divide it.

d. Some vowel combinations represent a single sound. Examples are ai, ay, ea, ee, ei, ey, ie, ou, oo:

- ai:
  - belief
- ey:
  - reject
- ie:
  - believe

Write your own word and divide it.

2. VC/V

- ca: bin
- se: cond
- lo: gic

Write your own word and divide it.

3. VC/CV

a. Here the pattern shows double consonant single sound:

- im: mune
- nor: mal
- pur: pose

Write your own word and divide it.

b. Here the pattern shows single consonant single sound and consonant combination single sound:

- pur: chase
- en: chant
- un: change

Write your own word and divide it.
c. Here the pattern shows single consonant single sound and consonant combination blended sounds:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sur} \quad \text{case} & \quad \text{com} \quad \text{plex} \\
\text{sur} \quad \text{plus}
\end{align*}
\]

write your own word and divide it

4. With longer words you may see a combination of patterns that help you pronounce words. For example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{bi} \quad \text{lin} \quad \text{gual} & \quad \text{mul} \quad \text{ti} \quad \text{ply} \\
\text{lax} \quad \text{ative}
\end{align*}
\]

write your own word and divide it

If words do not sound familiar to you after you have studied the patterns, then you should look them up in the dictionary. The application of patterns can help you recognize words that you may have heard but not read.

Thus far you have read about (1) finding words in the dictionary, (2) using the pronunciation key to help you pronounce words and (3) dividing words into smaller parts so that you can say them. Following you will find some practice exercises that can help you get into the habit of tackling unknown words systematically.
I. Finding Words in the Dictionary

PRACTICE

This exercise will require that you use a dictionary. To help you practice finding words in the dictionary look at the following word list and write the two guide words and page number from your dictionary where each word can be found. For example, in the 1973 edition of The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, the word percent is found between the two guide words peppercorn and perfidy on page 526. The word economic is found between the two guide words eclipse and edge on page 226.

To complete this exercise you should (1) write the name of the dictionary that you are using, (2) look at the word, (3) find the word in the dictionary, (4) write the two guide words in the space provided and (5) write the page number in the space provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Guide Words</th>
<th>Page Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. society</td>
<td>___________ and ___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nationality</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. theology</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. legitimate</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. zoology</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. benign</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. malignant</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. anatomy</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. stethoscope</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. guarantee</td>
<td>___________</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. Learning to use a Pronunciation Key

PRACTICE

You will find that pronunciation keys are valuable aids in pronouncing words. Usually you can find one at the bottom of the page or in the front part of dictionaries. This key is designed to show you the pronunciation symbol with a key word and to show you how the word is pronounced. For example, one symbol is ã. A key word for the symbol ã may be ape. This means that the symbol ã is pronounced like the a in ape. Another symbol is å. A key word for the symbol å is act. This means that the symbol å is pronounced like the a in act. Read one more symbol with us. The symbol is t. This symbol t is pronounced like the t in tap. In this section you will find some pronunciation symbols. Write at least two key words that show how the symbols can be pronounced. You may use your dictionary to help you pronounce the symbols. Do not write the key words listed in your dictionary. Think of your own.

write in the name of your dictionary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronunciation Symbols</th>
<th>Key Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ã</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ë</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. òò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. òòò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. òòòò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. òòòòò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. òòòòòò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. f</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. wh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. oi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. òòòòòò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. sh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. th</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4. Tackling Unknown Words

19. s
20. p

When you come to symbols that you do not know, think of your key words. Your key words will help you to figure out how to pronounce the symbol.
### III. Dividing Words

**PRACTICE**

The patterns suggested for dividing words into word parts were (1) V/CV, (2) VC/V and (3) VC/CV. Remember that the e at the end of words should not be used as part of the pattern. Also, remember to group the vowel combinations and consonant combinations whenever possible. Grouping these combinations will enable you to focus your attention on those parts of the word that should not be divided.

Further on in this chapter you will study other word parts that should not be divided. At that time we will suggest additional practice for you, but for now, practice dividing the following words based on the patterns you have studied.

To practice you should (1) write the words on the lines provided, (2) circle the vowel combinations and consonant combinations, if appropriate, (3) divide the words into word parts by writing the patterns above and/or below the word, (4) write the word in separate parts and (5) then pronounce the word. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study the words in the list.</th>
<th>Write the words; mark the parts and patterns.</th>
<th>Write the words in word parts and pronounce them.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accommodate</td>
<td>![accommodate]</td>
<td>![accommodate]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>![believe]</td>
<td>![believe]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instruct</td>
<td>![instruct]</td>
<td>![instruct]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Note: Even numbered items in the following word list are nonsense words.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study the words in the list.</th>
<th>Write the words; mark the parts and patterns.</th>
<th>Write the words in word parts and pronounce them.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. abstract</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. erbrag</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. techill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pleasant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Chapter 4. Tackling Unknown Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6. vermain</th>
<th>7. verbal</th>
<th>8. dofileme</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9. research</td>
<td>10. vesplish</td>
<td>11. weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. premophib</td>
<td>13. combination</td>
<td>14. cloudipher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. monumental</td>
<td>16. dainopap</td>
<td>17. comprehensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. bargoreid</td>
<td>19. melancholy</td>
<td>20. chubblemont</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. examine</td>
<td>22. semphremy</td>
<td>23. euphemistic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. spraghophor</td>
<td>25. tyranny</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One way to tackle unknown words is to study their meaningful parts. A prefix is a meaningful word part that comes at the beginning of a word. As you read, you will see the parts in many different words. Some prefixes have one meaning while others have at least two. First, we will consider those with one meaning.

In the words nonsmoking, nonliving and nonmember, the prefix non- is a meaningful word part. In each instance non- means not. Thus nonsmoking means not smoking as in the sentence, “She sat in the nonsmoking part of the dining room.” Also, nonliving means not living as in the sentence, “A chair is a nonliving thing.” And further, nonmembers means not a member as in the sentence, “Nonmembers of our group had to pay a fee to attend our meeting.” Other non- words in sentence parts follow. Study the following sentence parts and write what you think the underlined words mean.

1. nontaxable funds
2. a nonunion shop
3. a nonskid tire
4. a nonthinking reader
5. a nontoxic drug

Use your knowledge or your dictionary to help you think of five other sentence parts with words containing the non- prefix. Then, write the sentence parts and meaning for each non- word.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

Other one-meaning and two-meaning prefixes follow with their general meanings, example words and their specific meanings. Read and study them, then add your own example words and specific meanings. Use your dictionary to help you, if necessary.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefixes</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bio-</td>
<td>life</td>
<td>biography - life story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>biology - study of animal and plant life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. equi-</td>
<td>equal</td>
<td>equidistant - equally distant from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>equity - fairness, equally fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. inter-</td>
<td>between</td>
<td>interact - acting with others, between oneself and others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>interstate - between states</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. mal-</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>maltreat - treat badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>malnourished - bodily fed or nourished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. micro-</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>microscope - used for seeing small objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>microcomputer - small computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. mid-</td>
<td>middle</td>
<td>midday - middle of the day, noon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>midpoint - point at the center or middle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. mis- wrongly
   misplace
   -wrongly placed
   misdeed
   -wrong deed or behavior
   write your example

8. poly many
   polyglot
   -speaker or writer of many languages
   polygamy
   -many husbands or wives
   write your example

9. pre- before
   prewar
   -before the war
   preview
   -view or see before
   write your example

10. uni- one
    unique
    -one and only
    unite
    -to combine to make one
    write your example
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefixes</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bi-</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>bicolor — two colors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bifocal — glasses for seeing two distances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>twice in one</td>
<td>biweekly — twice in one week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bimonthly — twice in one month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fore-</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>foreknow — to know before hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>foresee — to see before it happens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in front</td>
<td>forehead — part of the head that is in front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forefeet — those feet that are in front on an animal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. semi-</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>semidome — one half of a dome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>semicircle — one half of a circle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>partly</td>
<td>semiprivate — when something is partly private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>semipublic — when something is partly public</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

write your example
4. re-
   - again
     - remake
     - remarry
       - make it again
       - to marry again
   - back
     - rebate
     - remit
       - to give something back for something
       - to send something back for something
   - reverse, remove

5. un-
   - not
     - uncooked
     - unhappy
       - something not cooked
       - someone not happy
   - reverse, remove
     - unlock
     - unveil
       - reverse the lock
       - remove the veil
V. Roots

PRACTICE

Roots are word parts that you may want to study so that when you come to words that you have not heard or read before you can begin to decipher their meanings. For example, the root -specere- means "to see or look." Usually you see it in its shortened form as -spec-, -spect- or -spic-. In the word retrospect the root is -spect- and it means "to look." Retro means "back," so the word retrospect means "to look back."

Other words in sentence parts containing the root -specere- follow. Study the sentence parts and write what you think the underlined words mean.

1. a suspect ran
2. his spectacles
3. a spectacle
4. the inspector

Use your knowledge or your dictionary to help you think of at least three other sentence parts with words containing -specere-. Then write the sentence parts and meaning for each -specere- word.

1. 
2. 
3. 

Other roots follow with their general meanings and example words with their specific meanings. Read and study them, then add your own example words and specific meanings.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roots</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. -audire- | hear | audible — can be heard  
 audition — a hearing to test fitness for a job |
| 2. -phon- | sound | phonics — method of teaching sound and written symbol relationships  
 telephone — instrument used to transmit speech sounds over a long distance |
| 3. -mobilis- | movable | automobile — a car moved by a motor  
 mobilize — make movable |
| 4. -chrono- | time | chronic — lasting a long time  
 chronological — time order |
| 5. -manu- | hand | manuscript — written by hand or typewriter  
 manual — made or done by hand |
| 6. -phil- | love of, greatly disposed to | philanthropy — love shown to mankind through gifts  
 Philadelphia — city of brotherly love |
| 7. -meter- | measure | thermometer —measures temperatures | odometer —measures distance traveled |
| 8. -scope- | instrument for observing | microscope —used to observe small objects | stethoscope —used to observe or hear sounds made by the heart and lungs |
| 9. -tenere- | hold, have | tenant —one who pays rent to have possession of | tenacious —holding tightly or firmly |
| 10. -naus- | ship | nausea —sea or ship sickness | cosmonaut —one who pilots a space ship |

write your example
VI. Suffixes

**PRACTICE**

In tackling unknown words it is often helpful to study their endings. These are sometimes called suffixes. These word parts have specific meanings. When you add these meanings to the rest of the word they strongly influence the total meaning. For example, in the words advisor, instructor and creditor, -or means one who. Thus, advisor means one who advises or gives advice in the sentence, “She went to her advisor to avoid making a bad decision.” Instructor means one who instructs or teaches in the sentence, “The instructor explained the problem so that we all understood it.” And, creditor means one who offers credit in the sentence, “We met with the creditor after we decided to purchase a new kitchen range.”

Other words ending in the suffix -or follow. Study the sentence parts below and write what you think the underlined words mean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. sailor boarded the ship</th>
<th>2. grantor requested a letter of</th>
<th>3. oppressor ignored the needs of others</th>
<th>4. met with the realtor after seeing the house</th>
<th>5. was the inventor of machines</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The suffix -er means one who as in farmer and New Yorker. A farmer is one who farms or works at farming and a New Yorker is one who lives in New York. Use your knowledge or your dictionary to help you think of five other sentence parts with words containing the -er suffix. Then write the sentence parts and meaning for each -er word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.</th>
<th>2.</th>
<th>3.</th>
<th>4.</th>
<th>5.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Other suffixes that (1) identify, (2) describe, (3) show action or process and (4) focus on how and where follow with their general meanings and example words with their specific meanings. Read and study them, then add your own example words and specific meanings.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes that Identify</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -ability, -bility,</td>
<td>indicates being</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ility</td>
<td></td>
<td>durability — being durable or lasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>legibility — being legible or readable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rigidity — being rigid, firm, or unbending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ation, -tion, -ion</td>
<td>indicates action or being, result of action</td>
<td>starvation — being starved or without food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>contribution — result of act of giving or contributing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fusion — act of coming together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -eer, -ier</td>
<td>one who is concerned with, works at or is involved in</td>
<td>auctioneer — one who works at selling at auctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>financier — one who has special interest and skill in money matters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. -ist</td>
<td>one who does, practices and has certain beliefs</td>
<td>dentist — one who practices dental care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>socialist — one who believes in socialism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. -ness</td>
<td>being or quality of</td>
<td>preparedness — being ready or prepared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>friendliness — being supportive or friendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. -ment</td>
<td>an action or product</td>
<td>recruitment — act of recruiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fragment — product of something broken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

write your example
7. **-logy** — expression, theory or science of
   - **phraseology** — expression through words and phrases
   - **biology** — science of life or living things

8. **-archy** — to rule or govern
   - **patriarchy** — man who rules
   - **oligarchy** — groups that rule

9. **-ics** — science or art of, practices
   - **economics** — science of production, distribution, and consumption of goods
   - **statistics** — science of gathering and classifying numerical data

10. **-cide** — indicates killing of
    - **genocide** — systematic killing of groups of people
    - **regicide** — killing of a king
### Suffixes that Describe

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes that Describe</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -able, -ible</td>
<td>capable or worthy of</td>
<td>durable — capable of lasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>legible — capable of being read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -less</td>
<td>lack of, without</td>
<td>toothless — without teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sleepless — without sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ful</td>
<td>condition of being full of</td>
<td>playful — full of fun or play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>useful — can be used, full of use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. -est</td>
<td>indicates degree</td>
<td>earliest — near the beginning of a period of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>weakest — most weak</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Suffixes that Show Action or Process

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes that Show Action or Process</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -fy</td>
<td>to cause, make, or feel</td>
<td>glorify — to make glorious or better</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>justify — to make just or right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ate</td>
<td>to cause, form, provide or arrange</td>
<td>invalidate — to cause to be deprived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>refrigerate — to provide for preservation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Suffixes that focus on, How? Where?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>General Meanings</th>
<th>Example Words and Specific Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -ly</td>
<td>manner or direction of doing</td>
<td>durably — in a lasting or durable manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>legibly — in an easy-to-read or legible manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ward</td>
<td>direction</td>
<td>westward — moving toward the west</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forward — moving toward the front</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

refrigerate — to provide for preservation

write your example
Additional Prefixes, Roots, and Suffixes Practice

To help you think further about these prefixes, roots and suffixes, select three different passages, approximately three paragraphs in length from textbooks, newspapers, magazines, manuals or other reading material. Read the first passage and write in the following columns all of the words containing prefixes, roots and suffixes that you can identify. Afterward, read the second passage and circle as many of the prefixes, roots and suffixes as you can identify. Then write the words with the circled word parts in the columns for Passage 2. Finally, read the third passage and repeat all that you did for the second passage, but also include the meanings for those words. Check your meanings against the practice exercises you completed earlier.

You may find some words that contain a prefix, root, suffix or all three. So, when you come to a word containing all three word parts, or two of the three word parts, place the word in only one column.

**PASSAGE 1:**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Words with</strong></td>
<td><strong>Words with</strong></td>
<td><strong>Words with</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prefixes</strong></td>
<td><strong>Roots</strong></td>
<td><strong>Suffixes</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSAGE 2:**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Circled Words</strong></td>
<td><strong>Circled Words</strong></td>
<td><strong>Circled Words</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>with Prefixes</strong></td>
<td><strong>with Roots</strong></td>
<td><strong>with Suffixes</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 4. Tackling Unknown Words

**PASSAGE 3**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words with Prefixes and Meanings</th>
<th>Words with Roots and Meanings</th>
<th>Words with Suffixes and Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REVIEWING AND APPLYING STRATEGIES FROM CHAPTERS 2 THROUGH 4

Remember, one purpose for identifying word parts is to help you to obtain a fuller meaning of what you read. In Chapters 2 and 3 you studied how to identify and organize information from sentences and passages so that you could study the important points. This chapter has provided you with some word-study information. When you use the information from the three chapters collectively, you should be able to get meaning more easily from what you read.

In this chapter you selected and studied some words from three passages for practice. This practice was designed to make you more aware of how helpful it is to understand the meaning of word parts. When you combine your knowledge with information from the Understanding Reading chart you will have a better opportunity to construct the fullest meaning of what has been written.

You are to: (1) Use one of your selected passages to respond to the nine questions on the following Understanding Reading chart. (2) Read the questions on the chart. (3) Read the passage. (4) Reread the passage and write responses to the chart questions. (5) Reread your responses. (6) Then, repeat steps 1 through 5 with the following passage.

Defining Problems

Scientific activity usually begins when one observes something that presents a problem he wishes to solve. The first step in the solution is to define the problem as specifically as possible. This is often done by asking questions about it in such a way as to break up the problem into simpler parts and also to suggest ways of obtaining the answers. The answers then lead to the solution of the original problem.

Here is an illustration. Suppose your desk lamp goes out while you are studying. The problem is: Why did this happen? To solve it we ask specific questions such as: Did the bulb burn out? Did the fuse blow out? Was the power turned off? Each question suggests an activity that will answer it. We may answer the first question by testing the bulb in another fixture known to be in good order. If the bulb lights, we know it is all right, and we move on to the second question. We may answer this by replacing the fuse with a new one. If this does not solve the problem, we go on to the next question, and so forth.

Defining problems by asking the right kinds of questions is one of the most effective skills of scientists. It requires imagination as well as creative thinking.

UNDERSTANDING READING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>Passage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. What or who is it about?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reviewing and Applying Strategies from Chapters 2 through 4

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>What was said about it or them?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>What might have been meant?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Were things compared?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What things?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Were things listed?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What was listed?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Did some things seem to make others happen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What were they?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Were things explained with examples?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Was the purpose for writing to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. convince you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. inform you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. entertain you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Can you use the information?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OTHER WORD ENDINGS

In addition to the prefixes, roots and suffixes studied, it is important to become aware of other endings added to words, as well as their functions. Generally, we think of them as having four functions. (These functions may not apply to every word; however, they can be used in many instances.)

One function of word endings is to tell you that there is more than one. Such words as boys, clocks, stores, houses, dresses and lunches tell you that there are more than one of these things. Notice that an -s and -es have been added to these words. That -s and -es is your signal to know that there is more than one boy, store, house, and so on.

A second function of word endings is to tell you that something has happened and that something is happening right now. Some examples are: (1) Cheryl shopped. (2) Cheryl is shopping. The first sentence tells you that Cheryl shopped in the past, while the second sentence tells you that Cheryl is making purchases at this very moment.

A third function of word endings added to words is to tell you that some comparisons are being made. For example: (1) The first jar is nearly full. (2) The second jar is fuller than the first jar. (3) The third jar is fullest of all the three jars. Here the endings -er and -est (added to words that describe) tell you to think about the relative amounts in the jars. Another example: your math textbook may be thick, but your psychology textbook may be thicker than the math textbook and your history textbook may be the thickest of the three textbooks.

A fourth function of word endings is to show that someone owns something. For example: (1) That man’s dog won the race. (2) Mrs. Mark’s garage is quite popular among motorcycle drivers. (3) One student’s grades were much higher than expected. In those sentences the -s has been added to words to show you that something belongs to someone or to indicate possession.

When you see word endings such as those presented above, think about the function those word endings serve in helping you to get meaning from words. Again, a word that ends in -s or -es tells you that there is more than one of something. A word that ends in -ed and -ing tells you that something has occurred or is occurring. A word that ends in -er and -est tells you that something is being compared to something else. And finally, a word that ends in -s tells you that someone owns something.

EVALUATION

In this chapter you have studied how to recognize and figure out the meanings of prefixes, recognize and figure out the meanings of roots, recognize and figure out the meanings of suffixes and how to pronounce words.

As in Chapters 2 and 3, the following selections written at varying levels of difficulty, have been designed to help you measure your progress in reading. Read the following selections and circle the words that make the reading make sense. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Whenever your score is 21 or more, it means that you are progressing very well with your reading.

After you have finished reading the selections, check your answers, count the number of correct choices and record your score. Compare your scores with your scores in Chapters 2 and 3. Are your scores about the same? Are you getting better? Remember to stop after each selection, check your answers and record your score.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. What was said about it or them?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. What might have been meant?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Were things compared?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Were things listed?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Did some things seem to make others happen?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Were things explained with examples?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Was the purpose for writing to a. convince you? b. inform you? c. entertain you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Can you use the information? How?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reviewing and Applying Strategies from Chapters 2 through 4
At the Denver Mint

A lot of people save pennies. Many more people just put them in a drawer and forget about them. That's too bad. Pennies are needed in the world of business. If all the forgotten pennies were brought out of hiding and used, it would save the mint a lot of time and money making more and more pennies every year.

The penny is our country's most popular coin. The Mint makes more pennies than any other coin. Yes fact, 76 percent of no coins made each year are about never pennies, of which about 40 percent are produced at Denver.

Pennies seldom made of two metals. They are 95 percent copper it will now percent. 5 percent zinc. "Nickels" have also made of two metals. They are 75 percent marks.

This copper if only 25 percent nickel. Both alloy is called cupro-nickel. Run other dressing in All top coins are called composite softly because they are when three wear layer per. Dimes, quarters and half-dollars several have three layers as makes the new 2

---

dollar coin second issued in the fall of 1971. The layers must be bonded together. This is called cladding.

The Act of April 2, 1792, sent for a national coinage from the establishment of the U.S. Mint. The first mint opened in Philadelphia and it was the first public building erected by the United States Government. The first coins made were pattern silver half dimes made by hand from silver belonging to George Washington. In 1793 copper cents and half cents were the first coins made for regular use.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is
Introducing a Speaker: Remember Who's Speaking

Introducing speakers to audiences in a pleasing, effective manner is an important skill. As chairman of a program you should try to get the occasion, the speaker, the subject, and the audience together as quickly, as interestingly, and as smoothly as possible. You should be brief because the speaker is more important than you are. What he has to say is of greater interest to the speech than what you clapped say. A chairman once tried this. He was ambitious a will introducing famous former pole-vaulting champion, never was also a tired lawyer and speaker, to when a chairman once tried this. He was ambitious. He tried talked at time a first length about no accomplishments of the vaulter. Then he discussed the why this subject listen the speaker planned to hear. He talked and talked. For last he that address. At ran, finished and said, “Mr. Eastman will now give us his address.” And Mr. Eastman did any that. He said, “My address is 000 Mills Building, Kansas City,” jur. which evenly, two and sat down. The audience rocked with chairs, at the expense of the laughter, furry

Chapter 4. Tackling Unknown Words

chairman. You can do better than this chairman if you keep in mind your purpose: to get the speaker and audience together quickly, simply and courteously.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Your score is_________
Gamma Rays Have a Glowing Future

What do surgical gowns, tongue depressors, potatoes, onions, strawberries, frog's legs, garlic cloves, and English Leather cologne bottles have in common?

En route to market nowhere in the world, each set these products is irradiated—zapped with cobalt 60 gamma rays showing preserve, sterilize, and what we sometimes sense the chemistry of whatever signal hit. Don't panic. Irradiators alter products do not become radioactive. And cobalt feel ignorant if you silently heard of commercial irradiation. Few likes haven't tried.

Few cloves lately irradiating human sludge with gamma rays.

After careful decades of modest obscurity, an irradiation industry is finally beginning to glow. Medical-equipment settling already irradiate 30% of the products they need to chemical and scientists around the stores are a sterilize, world after finding more and less uses for this quick also inexpensive treatment. The Bavarian government, for example, recently began pressing fertilizer made by radiate, careful sterilizing human sludge with gamma rays, without.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is.

In Chapter 1, Exercise M, you expressed a single idea in three different language styles. Each style conveyed similar meanings about the same topic. You wrote in everyday, business and textbook language styles. As you wrote you may have realized that just as you change your clothes to suit the varied activities in your life you can change your language style. You can hear changes in language styles when you listen and move from conversation to discussion. A different language style may be heard when you listen to a lecture. Likewise, you can recognize style changes as you read and move from personal letters to legal documents. Other language styles may be recognized when you read technical manuals and textbooks. In this chapter you will increase your awareness of varied styles of spoken and written language. Specifically, you will study and practice using a suitable language style for a particular life situation. You will change your language style as you move from least formal to everyday language to most formal or textbook language.

READ/THINK/STUDY

We have placed questions and exercises throughout this chapter to help you focus on the ideas presented here. Respond to the questions and exercises as you come to them. When you have completed your reading, reread the questions, your answers and the exercises as a means of reviewing the chapter.
Chapter 5. Using Language to Read Better

The Language-Reading Relationship

Describe the earliest experience you can recall using everyday language.

___________________________________________. How does it compare with the experience described in the following two paragraphs? Is it similar or different? Tell how______________________________

Reading is language based. It makes use of your listening and speaking experiences as well as the writer's script. Your earliest experience with language was as a listener. As you heard words, sentences and sentence parts repeated many times, and associated what you heard with what happened to you and what happened around you, you were developing the groundwork for what you are doing now—reading.

As you matured you started to speak the language you had heard. Speaking the language meant that you were adding another dimension to your language base. Further, when you noticed that what you said and what you heard could be represented in writing you were closer than ever to reading. When you finally associated listening, speaking, reading and writing, with your own experience, you became a reader.

Language Variety

All of us speak at least three forms of the English language. These forms vary from least formal to most formal. We use the least formal or everyday language when we talk casually with our friends and family and when we write personal letters and cards. This everyday language is often briefer than formal language. It is briefer because we know each other so well that we can use relatively few words to convey a great deal of information. For example, when we hear the word, "dinner" spoken in our home at a specific time, we know that dinner is being served and that we are expected to come to the table and eat. Yet, in another setting, perhaps at a special dinner, a waiter is likely to appear in formal attire and announce, "Dinner is served. Please be seated." This is more formal than the use of the single word "dinner."

How many other single words or parts of sentences can you think of that can be used in the same way as "dinner"? Write at least two examples. a_________________________ b_________________________ Now write your examples in a more formal language style. a._________________________ b._________________________

Language that is more formal than the everyday language is often used to conduct business or for job concerns. Words and parts of sentences used are likely to have special meaning for those involved in a particular business or engaged in
certain work. For example, newspapermen “put the paper to bed” (send it to be printed) or remind us at the end of a story that, “that’s a 30.” Cosmetologists may be concerned with hair sets and pedicures, restauranteurs with haute cuisine and silver services, retailers with marketing and advertising, and manufacturers with production costs and labor. So, cosmetologists, restauranteurs, retailers, manufacturers and others you can name, each speak a language style or jargon that is shared by others in their particular business or job.

Here, we suggested language or jargon that is associated with four different businesses or jobs. Now, think of a business or job with which you are familiar. Write the name of the business or job. List as many examples of related jargon, in words or sentence parts, as you can.

The most formal language of the three is the language often used in academic institutions to communicate and clarify information. Our formal language, the language of lectures, discussions, journals and books, is usually formulated after careful thought to ensure precision and accuracy of meaning. Frequently but not always, formal language requires the use of more words than the less formal language styles. Writers of formal language recognize that writing must stand on its own without explanation. It has to stand on its own because the reader cannot ask the writer questions. Therefore, formal written language needs to include all of the necessary information about a particular subject or statement. For example, lectures or writings about science might include such terms as hydraulic cycles and acid rain, mathematics might include congruence of forms and simultaneous equations, and psychology might include behavior modification and norm-referenced lists.

Think about language that you hear or read in formal settings and the example cited above. Now select a textbook or academic journal and find two examples of language that include specialized or subject-related words and/or sentence parts. Also find explanations that clarify the words and/or sentence parts. Write these language examples in the space provided.

Now that you have read about three language styles that vary from least formal to most formal, you are ready to use your knowledge, experience and dictionary (if necessary) to practice matching various styles of language with specific situations. In other words, you will write the missing words, sentence parts and/or sentences to fit least formal or everyday language, business or job language and most formal or textbook language in the “Matching Language Styles” chart, as explained at the top of page 154.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptor</th>
<th>Personal/Everyday Language</th>
<th>Business/Job Language</th>
<th>Textbook/Academic Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why some people go into business</td>
<td>For the money</td>
<td>The profit motive</td>
<td>Primarily for economic benefit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description of the political organization in the U.S.</td>
<td>There's a two-party system.</td>
<td>Politically, the country runs on a two-party system.</td>
<td>The United States of America is organized politically so that two parties function in opposition of each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greetings</td>
<td></td>
<td>Hello, Mr. Jones.</td>
<td>Good evening ladies and gentlemen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharing good news</td>
<td>I've got good news, ...</td>
<td></td>
<td>It is my pleasure to inform you ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor personal relationships</td>
<td>They don't get along.</td>
<td>They are not compatible.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical complaint</td>
<td></td>
<td>He experienced abdominal pain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of U.S. Census</td>
<td></td>
<td>One purpose of census data is to reveal residential patterns of people in the United States.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ranking of people</td>
<td>Upper crust</td>
<td>High socio-economic group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Read and think through the first two items with us. Begin by reading the descriptor column. This column tells you the content or idea represented in the three language styles. The everyday language column tells how the idea might be expressed to someone we know very well. The business or job column tells how we might express the idea when we function in a business situation. Business or job language is usually explicit and includes words that may be omitted but understood in everyday language. The last column contains academic or textbook language which is the most formal. Textbook language is likely to use technically precise terms to express ideas in a structured academic manner.

After studying the first two items read through the remaining items. As you read you will notice that some of the spaces have not been filled in. For each item, first read all of the language across the page that is provided about the descriptor. Second, notice the blank space and think about language that matches the column headings. Third, fill in the blank space.

Your Language Style

There are a number of reasons for studying the variations in language style. One reason is that it may help you recognize that you can expect to read different kinds of information in different kinds of writings. For example, if you receive a letter from a friend and the handwriting is unclear, chances are you will be able to skip the unclear words and still understand the basic message in the letter. You understand it because you know the kind of things your friend might write. Therefore, you may be able to anticipate the meaning of the unclear words and maintain a sense of the letter's message. Similarly, this occurs when you read about subjects that are familiar to you. When you are familiar with the content and style of language you are reading and you encounter a word that you don't understand, you may be able to skip the word and still make sense of the remaining written language. You can do this with some assurance of maintaining the intended meaning if you are familiar with the content and style of written language. Also, you can expect words in sentences to be written in an order so that they will make sense. For example, "Part of a large heterogeneous group of people toured the nation's capital." Assume for a moment that the word that is unfamiliar to you is heterogeneous. Even though the word may be unfamiliar, you know that whatever word you predict should be a word that describes a group of people. If you decide to skip that word, you will know by examining other words in the sentence that "part of a large group of people toured the nation's capital." however, you may not know what type of group. The important thing for you to remember is that the placement of words in sentences can help you decide the kind of prediction that you can make about word meanings in sentences.

Practice predicting or guessing the missing words for the following paragraph. You know that whatever words you predict must make sense in the language of the sentences and the content of the paragraph. Now write in your predictions for the missing words.

I have found that the experience of writing a story is beautiful. Writing allows me to share some of my most personal thoughts with the reader. It affords me the opportunity of saying
things through language that I love to say. It satisfies me to know that what I have written may be enjoyed by many people whom I may never meet. While I rejoice over that possibility, I am equally saddened by the of not being able to know what you think about writing. However, my dis- may is softened as remember that while I share your thoughts, you are sharing my

Another reason for becoming aware of the way your language works is that sometimes when you talk or write you may explain, define, describe and give examples to help clarify what you are saying. As an illustration assume that you are talking to your best friend about “a heterogeneous group of people,” and the look on your friend’s face communicates to you that he is puzzled about what you are saying. You may provide him with clues that will help him understand you. Your clues may be in the form of a definition or an example. Your definition may be something like this, “... a heterogeneous group, or, a group of many types of people.” Your example could include such types of people as: (a) those of varied ages, (b) those of varied heights and (c) those representing the full range of income levels. Your definition combined with the examples helped to communicate the idea of “a heterogeneous group” to your friend. When you read for information, you can often find these types of clues to help you understand your reading. Since you provide clues such as definitions, examples and explanations when you speak, you can expect to find these same types of clues when you read.

Read the following paragraph and mark in the paragraph the clues to meaning by writing: (a) def for definitions, (b) ex for examples, (c) des for descriptions and (d) underline the explanations.

Weather turbulence, the wildly changing motion of swirling wind, can cause frightening destruction. Uprooted trees, damaged cars and injured citizens are just a few examples of the results of turbulence that is described as either thermal or mechanical. Thermal turbulence seems to be related to changing temperatures and the formation of clouds through condensation. Mechanical turbulence seems to occur when air moves quickly over rough irregularly formed land.

Up to this point we have established the notion that language style and word order influences our expectations as we read. Listening also influences our expectations. When we listen we expect that people will speak in a way that makes sense based on the way we expect them to put words together. We expect that they will put words together in an English language manner. Sometimes we expect people to provide examples, repeat themselves or say the same thing in a different way. Likewise, we should come to expect that this will occur as we read. As long as we
remember that listening to language can have a positive effect on our reading, then we know that we can use it to assist us as we read.

Assume that you are listening to the following sentences and sentence parts in situations where the language style varies from least formal to most formal. Place the sentences and sentence parts in the appropriate space on the lines that follow each grouping. For example, the following sentences would appear on the line as follows: “It doesn’t cost much.” “It’s cheap.” “This is not very expensive.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It’s cheap.</th>
<th>It doesn’t cost much.</th>
<th>This is not very expensive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>least formal</td>
<td>most formal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now rank the following from least formal to most formal.

1. It is malfunctioning. It’s broken. It does not work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2. You got the time? Can you tell me the correct time? What time is it?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

3. That is a sufficient amount. That is sufficient. That’s enough.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

4. We form a cohesive group. We stick together. We are a tightly knit group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

5. Please be seated. Won’t you have a seat? Sit down!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

6. crooked teeth, badly formed teeth, maloccluded dental structures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

7. seeks a job, pursues employment, looks for work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>least formal</th>
<th>most formal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
8. a shrewd customer, a smart shopper, a wise consumer

9. in strict confidence, keep quiet, in secret

10. of major concern, important, a pressing matter

The aim of this chapter was to help you realize that language varies from least to most formal styles. Recognizing these styles in both spoken and written language can help you successfully anticipate the intended message. Anticipating the writer's message may lead to a better understanding of the message you read. After all, the purpose for reading is understanding.

As in Chapters 2 through 4, the following selections, written at varying levels of difficulty, have been designed to help you measure your progress in reading. Read the following selections and circle the words that make the reading make sense. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Whenever your score is 21 or more, it means that you are progressing very well with your reading.

After you have finished reading the selections, check your answers, count the number of correct choices and record your score in the space provided. Compare your scores with your scores in previous chapters. Are your scores about the same? Are you getting better?
Mumps

Mumps occur mostly in young children. Although it seldom results in grave complications, it causes swollen glands in the face and neck, fever, headache, and earache. It can lead to a condition called orchitis—painful swelling of the testes—when contracted by boys younger than thirteen. Orchitis occurs in about 20 times of mumps cases in high age group and, although tight, can most. result in male children. sterilility.

Mumps vaccine is recommended for all children over the more of 12 months. If complicated sooner, it may not come an effect. Adolescents and given aching group girls who have not had fever should be immunized. adults mumps vaccine degrees although long in condition, lasting, possibly lifetime, immunity. lunchtime.

Swollen glands and no mild reactions, such as school and itching, may occur about mumps immunization, but they are rare. In a very small following most person of cases, encephalitis (inflammation of the brain) has occurred in vac-cine recipients within 30 complications following immunization. This may days

Chapter 5. Using Language to Read Better

test that care
cases been coincidental, however, since there is no definite evidence giving have rashes linking

mumps immunization with encephalitis.

The
Measles vaccine should not be given to pregnant women because it has not Mumps

been tested for its effects on the fetus.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Your score is__________
Semantics

Semantics is the science of what words really mean. There is constant change in our language. Some words emerge from the dictionary into popular usage. Other words wither away from neglect or are banished by abuse. And the meanings of words frequently change. The science of semantics is very important. The subject really deserves and gets a great deal of attention from men and women in public relations. For in communicating and interpreting, practitioners live by words—and make their living by them. Practitioners seek mastery of word meanings both as users and as understanders.

The basic importance of neglected must never be lost. In communicating, a person is sometimes making decisions on word changing. When you constantly lost work strike, decide whether in the refusal of men to come should be called a rushed. a work off practice, many people, stoppage, or a damnable crime against the after, you are making a live science, running in semantics.

decision clever word

There is neither one-to-one ratio between a dictionary and its meaning. More no capable even.

likely, the ratio is one-to-fifty. Really selecting words to use making weapons, similarly, in on

---

Chapter 5. Using Language to Read Better.

Until the practitioner must think that the same signs and word symbols have remember setting frantic different tasks for different people. Not if that; they have two several meanings only evenly measured as kinds of meanings. One kind of meaning is denotative or the other is set and meaning marking. Connotative. Denotative typing is the common dictionary therefore. Connotative meaning. Seeking is the emotional nor evaluative meaning we read into words because of our experience and background. For example, all people will agree that "dog" denotes a four-legged, furry, canine animal. For most people, the word "dog" connotes a friendly, faithful pet. However, to others it connotes a dangerous animal to be feared.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is________________
The Microchip

The microchip is a tiny slice of silicon, an "electronic book" that stores information in a binary code consisting of zeros and ones. Far too small to be seen by the naked eye, the chip requires a read-out terminal that converts the electronic transistor codes into the language of the viewer. Screens display the material textual signs at viewer-controlled speeds.

The sensations of the computer revolution for education are my primary category. Indeed, a large portion makes the Western world never again can be concerned.

The computerized society. Our task is silicon with and using construction.

The computer is considered a civilized society. Our task is silicon with and using construction.

The computer is considered a civilized society. Our task is silicon with and using construction.

The sensations of the computer revolution for education are my primary category. Indeed, a large portion makes the Western world never can be concerned.

The computer is considered a civilized society. Our task is silicon with and using construction.

Human communication has gone through four distinct revolutions. The first was occasioned by our species-specific skills of complex speech—a screen for growth. An approach all era of virtually exponential delay.

The original was occasioned by our species-specific skills of complex speech—a screen for growth. An approach all era of virtually exponential delay.

The original was occasioned by our species-specific skills of complex speech—a screen for growth. An approach all era of virtually exponential delay.

whether, revolution when Johann Gutenberg, electronically, became the first European to presumably, use list movable type in his printing press. The fourth and potentially most pro- era found revolution has been wrought by the enormous advances in telecommunications in the span of a single lifetime. Although the telegraph, telephone, and radio played an important role, not until the last decade has our globe begun to become a "wired planet"—an information society created by the microchip.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your score is
By now you have studied how to obtain meaning from sentences, passages and words. In Chapter 4 you practiced strategies for increasing your word knowledge. The focus in that chapter was on pronouncing unfamiliar words that you may have heard previously in a meaningful context and on recognizing word parts that frequently occur in words. In Exercises G and N in Chapter 1 you assessed some of your knowledge about word meanings. Here you will study more of what was suggested in those exercises. In this chapter you will focus your study and practice on increasing word knowledge through a study of word relationships and a recognition of the importance of sight words.

SIGHT-WORD STRATEGY

Some words are best learned by being recognized immediately at sight. Such words are spelled in ways that do not necessarily give clues to their meaning or pronunciation. These sight-words appear over and over again in books, magazines and newspapers. So, if you recognize a large number of words at sight, you can read better or more efficiently without breaking or interrupting the flow of meaning.

If you did not recognize some words in the list in Chapter 1, you may want to try a systematic strategy for learning to recognize these words at sight. The words in the list appear very often in materials that you will need to read.
Chapter 6. Learning and Using More Words

Following you will find three variations of a five-step strategy for your use in learning sight words. All unfamiliar sight words should be practiced for five days in a row. Use the strategy variations to help you learn the sight words.

A. Variation of Sight-Word Strategy

Step 1. Have someone pronounce the unfamiliar word for you five times. Repeat and look at the word as it is being pronounced.
Step 2. Say the word five times. As you say the word move your finger under the word from left to right.
Step 3. Close your eyes and try to see the word and say it five times.
Step 4. Write and say the word five times as you look at the word.
Step 5. Find and circle the word five times in your favorite newspaper or magazine.

B. Variation of Sight-Word Strategy

Step 1. Write the word to be learned on a note card and have someone pronounce the word for you.
Step 2. Write a sentence part using the word on the other side of the note card.
Step 3. Keep the card with you as much as possible.
Step 4. Read the card over and over again. You may read it during breakfast, while you ride to work, during your break and while shopping. In other words, keep it handy.
Step 5. On the fifth day of this word-study strategy, find and circle the word at least five times in newspapers or magazines.

C. Variation of Sight-Word Strategy

Step 1. Write the word to be learned on five separate strips of paper and have someone pronounce the word for you.
Step 2. Tape the strips of paper with the word to be learned in five different places. Select places that you visit often and places that are very visible to you. These may be places such as the mirror in your bedroom or bathroom, a kitchen cabinet that you open every morning for breakfast dishes or food, the dash board in your car, your TV screen and your wallet or purse.
Step 3. Say the word over and over each time that you see it.
Step 4. Write and say the word every other time that you read it on one of your strips of paper. For example, if the first time you see the word each day is on your bedroom mirror, say the word over and over again. The second time that you see the word it may be on the kitchen cabinet. This time you should write and say the word over and over again. The third time that you see the word, just say it over and over again. The fourth time you know you will write and say the word. And, the fifth time you will say the word over and over again.
Step 5. On the fifth day of this word-study strategy, find and circle the word five times in different newspapers or magazines.

Keep a notebook of your words. Every time that you learn a new word write the word in your notebook. Read over all of your sight words at the end of each week.
Reading over all of your words at the end of each week will help you to remember them.

You have read about a strategy with some variations that can help you memorize sight words. Try each of the strategy variations to see which one works best for you, or, use all three for variety. Begin today to learn those unfamiliar words.

Foreign Phrases

As you read you are likely to find words and phrases borrowed from other languages. These foreign phrases have special meanings that must be fully understood if you are to read with accuracy and precision. Following this paragraph are some sentences with foreign phrases. Study them using your sight-word strategy. Quickly read each sentence to see if you understand the meaning of the foreign phrase it contains. Place a check at the beginning of the sentences that you fully understand. Next, use your dictionary to help you write the meaning of the foreign phrase on the line following each sentence. For example:

Sentence—His parents were very proud of him when he graduated cum laude.
Meaning—__________ with praise or honor

1. By the time we reached the church the wedding was a fait accompli.

2. Taxes are paid on a per capita basis.

3. The prince has such savoir faire for one so young.

4. He reread the letter to the official to be sure that it was well written and contained no non sequiturs.

5. He appeared in loco parentis in juvenile court on behalf of his nephew.

6. Her sang-froid after performing at the recital surprised and delighted us.

7. He was listed as persona non grata after his defection to this country.

8. Her faux pas went unnoticed.

9. The angry group left the meeting en masse.
Chapter 6. Learning and Using More Words

10. "Au contraire," he protested, "I did enjoy the show."

11. He managed the factory in a laissez faire style.

12. The per diem rate at the hotel was 20% higher than last year's rate.

13. The tiny country was in a de facto state of war.


15. We were surprised to find that our story was printed in toto in the magazine.

WORD RELATIONSHIP STRATEGIES

The more you study words the more you will become aware of how words relate to each other. These relationships can be noted more easily when they are grouped or categorized. You will notice that words can be grouped because they may do some of the same things or share some of the same relationships. For example, some words are related by association, some by cause and effect, some by word similarities and some by word opposites.

As you study (1) associations, (2) cause and effect, (3) similarities and (4) opposites of words you will become more aware of the words you already know and use often. Your experiences have provided you with knowledge about many words. These words may be used more easily or readily when you recognize ways of grouping or classifying them for use. Grouping words according to association should remind you that some words suggest the use of other words as in "fork-eat." Grouping words according to cause and effect tells you that some words (the cause) may make something happen (the effect) as in "fire-burn." Grouping words according to similarities tells you that some words represent meanings that are almost like other words as in "thin-slim." And grouping words according to opposites tells you that some words are very different from other words as in "tall-short."

In this section of the chapter your attention is directed toward recognizing word relationships as a way of expanding the number of words and meanings you know.
I. Word Associations

STUDY AND PRACTICE

Words name, describe, provide linkage between and among each other, show operations and prescribe conduct. It is important to recognize that words function in these ways. One way to increase our word knowledge is to notice the way words relate to each other. In Chapter 2 you asked yourself questions about sentences using such words as, what, why, how and when. These words may be used to help stimulate your thinking about specific words when they are associated or related to other words.

Words are related when they go with other words or when words remind you of other words. For example, the word towel reminds us of the words dry, clean and bath. The word towel reminds us of dry because we use a towel to dry things and ourselves. The word towel reminds us of clean because we use a towel to clean such things as furniture and dishes. The word towel reminds us of bath because we use a towel when we take a bath.

What do you think of when you hear or see the word pencil? We thought of paper, pen, write, mark, draw and erase. Why do you think that these words came to mind? We reasoned that a pencil is often used with paper. The word pen came to mind because a pen and a pencil function in the same way; they are used to write, mark or draw. Also a pencil may be used instead of a pen because the markings can be erased. The following reflects our thinking about the word pencil.

Word → reminds us of → because

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>reminds us of</th>
<th>because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pencil</td>
<td>paper</td>
<td>it is used with paper to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pen</td>
<td>both are used in the same way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>write</td>
<td>that is what is done with it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mark</td>
<td>that is what is done with it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>draw</td>
<td>that is what is done with it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>erase</td>
<td>it is often used instead of a pen because its markings can be erased</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the next examples.

Word → reminds us of → because

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>reminds us of</th>
<th>because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>of the decisions we make when we shop for them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>budget</td>
<td>of the amount of money we have to spend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>foods</td>
<td>we must cook them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>classes</td>
<td>we attend them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vacation</td>
<td>of the places we like to visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>we can accept some things and refuse others</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Our dictionary and thesaurus helped us to add the following words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>reminds us of</th>
<th>because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>we have a choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>determination</td>
<td>when we make a choice we attempt to fulfill it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>selection</td>
<td>we can choose from among items</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word | reminds us of | because
---|---|---
credit | things are bought on credit | because
buy | another word for credit | because
charge | if we don’t pay we will be in it | because
debt | a charge card is used to buy on credit | because
card | when we get a loan we have credit | because
loans | banks give it | because
bank | we earn it as we take courses | because
college

Our dictionary and thesaurus helped us to add the following words:

- credit payments | we pay often to keep credit | because
- acknowledge when we acknowledge someone’s contribution we give them credit | because

Study the following words. Use your memory and dictionary or thesaurus, if necessary, to help you to list words that remind you of the words in the word list. Then, tell why you were reminded of each word in the space provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>remind you of</th>
<th>because</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
solution | | |
communication | | |
transport | | |
money | | |
passion | | |
rhythm | | |
When you expect that some words will remind you of other words, then you are likely to find yourself reading more easily than if you did not. Quick recognition of familiar words and the way they relate to each other make it easier to make sense of what you read. When you insist on making sense of what you read, you demonstrate that you are an advanced reader.

| husky |  
| sports |  
| scrub |  
| type |  

When you expect that some words will remind you of other words, then you are likely to find yourself reading more easily than if you did not. Quick recognition of familiar words and the way they relate to each other make it easier to make sense of what you read. When you insist on making sense of what you read, you demonstrate that you are an advanced reader.
Another way that words and the ideas that they represent are related is through cause and effect. Some words represent things, ideas or actions that lead to or cause other things, ideas or actions. For example, the word pain (an effect) suggests that something has happened to cause it. That something could be infection or some form of illness, a sharp blow or some form of accident, or loss of love or some form of emotional trauma. Thus, several causes may also be the effects of a particular cause. For example, tension may cause or lead to the effects of illness, sleeplessness and irritability. An experience of some form of pleasure may lead to or cause a smile, relaxation and a feeling of happiness. However, it is important to remember that it is not always possible to know what causes specific effects and vice versa. Therefore we are really studying probable causes and effects.

Following are some examples of words that seem to be related through cause and effect. Read them, think about your experiences and add words that seem to fit in the spaces that are provided. The questions below the spaces are there to help you think about cause and effect words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause or Causes</th>
<th>may lead to</th>
<th>an Effect or Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a germ</td>
<td></td>
<td>a cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause a cold?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What might be another effect of the presence of a germ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. water</td>
<td></td>
<td>wetness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause wetness?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What might be another effect of water?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. salt</td>
<td></td>
<td>thirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause thirst?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What might be another effect of salt?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. fire</td>
<td></td>
<td>burns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause burns?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What might be another effect of fire?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. crime</td>
<td></td>
<td>punishment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause punishment?</td>
<td></td>
<td>What might be another effect of crime?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. practice</td>
<td>mastery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause mastery?</td>
<td>What might be another effect of practice?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7. overeating</th>
<th>obesity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What else might cause obesity?</td>
<td>What might be another effect of overeating?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write three other pairs of words that represent probable cause and effect experiences you have had or read about in the following spaces.

8. 

9. 

10. 

Notice how thinking about word relationships increases the number of words you are aware of. This awareness of cause and effect relationship words can help you understand more clearly what you read.
III. Word Similarities

STUDY AND PRACTICE

One way that words are related to each other is that they have similar meanings. The words prize, grant, and award are similar in that they describe something that is given for something that has been judged to be deserving or worthwhile. Even though the words are similar in meaning, they may be used to express different shades of meanings. For example, read the sentences: (1) He won a prize. (2) He won a grant. (3) He won an award. When you read them you may have thought that he received something different in each sentence. And, you should have. All three words, prize, grant, and award, can represent the same general meaning or something given for something deserving, yet each word suggests a special type of something given. A prize may be something given as a reward for some effort, as in a contest. A grant may be something that is given to someone to use in a particular way. An award may be something given as a result of having been judged worthy. When you understand that words can have similar meanings, yet have their own special meaning, then you can interpret what the writer has written in a precise way. This interpretation shows that your word knowledge is expanding.

To help you practice examining words for meaning, we will give you a sentence with an underlined word followed by three words. As you read the sentence, examine the underlined word for meaning in the context of the sentence. You should use the other words in the sentence to help you understand the underlined word. (Often word meanings are influenced by the context they are in.) Next, study the three following words. See if you understand the meaning of the words. Try to find a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined word in the sentence. If you do, circle that word. If you do not know the meaning of the underlined word or of the three words following the sentence, use your dictionary to help you.

Here are the sentence and words. First, read the sentence. Second, read the words. Third, circle the word that is similar in meaning to the underlined word in the sentence.

Sentence—We procured a small collection of glass figures.
Words—discovered, lost, obtained

You should have circled the word obtained. In the sentence the underlined word could mean "to obtain" or "to acquire."

Read another example with us. Remember to examine the underlined word in context for meaning. After reading the sentence read the three words that follow. Again, if you feel that you do not know the meaning of the words, use your dictionary to help you. However, we encourage you to search the context for meaning. This will increase your skill of acquiring meaning from words.

Sentence—We ascertained the location of the meeting.
Words—changed, arranged, determined

In that sentence ascertained means "to make certain of." The word in the list that means about the same as "to make certain of" is determined. So you should have circled the word determined.
Chapter 6. Learning and Using More Words

Remember to use your dictionary only when you cannot figure out the meaning of the word from the context.

In Part I, you will find some sentences with underlined words and some choices of words that could be similar in meaning to the underlined words. Study the sentences. Study the choices of words that could have similar meanings to the underlined words. Decide which word is similar in meaning to the underlined word. If you do not know the meaning of the underlined word after carefully studying it in context, then use your dictionary to help you. When you feel that you know the meaning of the word, study the sentence again. Finally, circle the word that has a similar meaning to the underlined word.

**PART I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study the sentences.</th>
<th>Circle the word that is similar in meaning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. His solution to the problem was cunning.</td>
<td>inept, clever, sly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. She declared that she despised milk.</td>
<td>detested, enjoyed, feared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. He was persuaded to leave early.</td>
<td>retained, discouraged, induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. His annoyance was evident in his voice.</td>
<td>destruction, anger, delight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The couple went back to school for additional instruction in health care.</td>
<td>laboratory, development, training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Her voice was shrill as she gave the order.</td>
<td>resonant, light, piercing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. We treasured the book that we found in the attic.</td>
<td>hid, restrained, loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. He told a credible story about the marketplace.</td>
<td>believable, credit, simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. They gladly shared their innovative ideas with the group.</td>
<td>trite, innocent, new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. He prefaced his speech with a very funny story.</td>
<td>ended, started, prepared</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Part II, you will find sentences with underlined words. Study the sentences carefully. Then, write words on the blank lines that are similar in meaning to the underlined word in the sentence.

**PART II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study the sentences.</th>
<th>Write words that are similar in meaning.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The students decided to unite their efforts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. They were both very bashful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We all agreed to support his initial argument.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. They joyously celebrated the victory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. We can learn from our defeats.
6. She collected many ancient articles.
7. The food at the banquet was enticing.
8. The reporter exposed the criminal activity.
9. Soap operas dominate day-time television.
10. We watched as a new personality emerged.

In Part III, you will develop webs of words with similar meaning. First, think with us as we develop webs of word similarities. We will use the word careful and think of words that have similar meaning. One word that is similar in meaning to careful is cautious. The beginning web looks like this:

```
cautious
   
   careful
```

Another word that has a similar meaning to careful is meticulous. The web should now look like this:

```
cautious
   
   careful
   
meticulous
```

A dictionary can be used to help identify other words that have similar meanings. Two additional words that are similar to careful in meaning are circumspect and scrupulous. The web now looks like this:

```
cautious
   
   circumspect
   
       careful
   
meticulous
```

The next step is to find words that have similar meanings to cautious, meticulous, scrupulous and circumspect. As you identify more and more words with similar meanings, your word knowledge will increase. Develop your web of words in Part III. Add as many words as you can to your webs.
By studying word similarities you should become more knowledgeable about word relationships. In other words, many words are similar in meaning to other words. Therefore, knowing one word can help you think of or find other words.
There are ways of thinking about words that may help you determine if you know meanings for them. Thinking about or knowing a word that is opposite in meaning can broaden your understanding of how words are related to each other and your knowledge of words in general. For example, if you know that the word *free* means “one is not confined or constrained” and the word *constrained* means “one is confined or not free” then you know that a person cannot be free and constrained at the same time. Free does not mean partly free or constrained. If a person is partly constrained he or she is not free. It is an either-or situation. Some pairs of words are exactly opposite in their meanings. Free means “not constrained.” One is either free or constrained.

A second way to think about word opposites is to think about degrees of meaning. For example, the words *imperfect* and *perfect* are opposite in meaning. Imperfect may mean “close to perfect, partly perfect or nowhere near perfect.” Imperfection therefore represents a range of meanings. Some word opposites may represent a certain meaning with degrees of that meaning.

A third way to think about word opposites is to think about words that suggest another word through the relationship of dependency. For example, *advisee* suggests that there is an advisor and *mother* suggests that there is or was a child. If a person is an advisee, that person is advised by someone called an advisor. If a person is a mother, that person is one who has a child.

When you study word opposites, then, you will want to remember that there are different ways of thinking about them. They are: (1) two words that indicate “either-or” instances, (2) two words where one represents a way or state of being and the opposite word represents shades of not being as in the words *spoiled* and *unspoiled*, and (3) two word opposites where one word would naturally suggest another word as in *patient* and *doctor*.

It is not important for you to try to identify word opposites for each of the three points mentioned above. The important thing is for you to recognize that there are a number of words that are opposite in meaning and that there is more than one way of being opposite. When you study word opposites it can help you extend your knowledge of words. When you focus on meaning you are more likely to question and anticipate what is written. These are signs of an advanced reader.

In Part I, you will find some sentences with underlined words and some choices of words that could be opposite in meaning to the underlined words. Study the sentences, then the choices of word opposites. Review the points mentioned above about word opposites. Circle the word that has the best opposite meaning from the underlined word. You should use your dictionary and a thesaurus to help clarify the meaning of any word with which you are not familiar. Remember that the word you choose depends upon what the word means in the sentence.

**PART I**

Study the sentences.  
Circle the word that is opposite in meaning.

1. He tried to **disorganize** the troops.  
   sensitize, mobilize, accompany
PART I (continued)

Study the sentences.  

2. It was impolite of them to push ahead in line.  respectful, orderly, violent
3. The room was occupied by several people awaiting help.  vacant, unmeaning, absent
4. There was order to her bookkeeping style.  invisible, obscure, confusion
5. The professional actor won many awards.  business, matchmaker, amateur
6. Road construction made travel plans for the future possible.  production, demolition, prediction
7. The ice-covered road was dangerous.  slippery, safe, grappling
8. A good pen is a necessary tool for a businessman.  essential, dispensable, explosive
9. Several condemned buildings were annihilated.  exterminated, destroyed, constructed
10. The highway from my town to her city was straight.  broad, curved, narrow

In Part II, you will find a second set of sentences with underlined words. Show that you can determine meaning of the words by circling their opposites. When you can recognize and say what the word does not mean, chances are that you have given a lot of thought to that word and you should know what the word means. Use your dictionary and a thesaurus to help you to get a better understanding of the words when necessary. (In some dictionaries and thesauruses you may find word opposites listed.)

PART II

Study the sentences.  Write the underlined words' opposite meanings.

1. They were joined in marriage.  
2. The employees formed a union.  
3. We did not park in the private driveway.  
4. We finally induced her to come to the party.  
5. They met at the park entrance.  
6. He disconnected the live telephone wires.  
7. The group prohibited circulation of their material.  
8. Their pleasant room arrangement was relaxing.  
9. An inept person would not be happy holding this job.  
10. They rejected two of the five applications.
In Part III, you will develop webs of word opposites. We will use the word light to begin our web. When we think of words that are opposite in meaning to light at least three come to mind. Drawing on our experience we remember that the opposite of something that is light in weight is something that is heavy. The beginning of our web looks like this:

```
    light    heavy
```

Another word opposite in meaning to light is the word dark. A dress or some object can be either light in color or dark in color. Now our web looks like this:

```
    light    heavy
          dark
```

Light may be thought of as an action. We can light a candle and extinguish it. Thus the opposite meaning of light in this instance is extinguish. The web looks like this:

```
    light    heavy
    extinguish
          dark
```

Our web shows three words that are opposite in meaning to the word light. The web may be continued by finding words that are opposite in meaning from heavy, dark and extinguish, or finding words that are opposite in meaning of as many of the words as possible. We identified airy and giddy as being opposite in meaning of heavy. And, we identified solid as being opposite in meaning of airy. The word create is opposite in meaning of the word extinguish. A word opposite of the word giddy is the word sad and a word opposite of the word dark is the word clear. The web now looks like this:

```
    create    sad    giddy
        /    /    /
   extinguish    airy    solid
        /    /    /
    light    heavy    airy
        /    /
    dark    clear
```
Let us assume that the word amend is a new word for us. To help us to broaden our word knowledge of amend, we will develop a word-opposite web. Think through the development of this word-opposite web with us. The first thing we can do is to understand the word amend. We asked ourselves, what does the word amend mean? We know that one meaning of the word amend is improve. But, what else could it mean? We took our dictionary and thesaurus and looked up the word amend. From those sources we found that the word amend could also mean correct and alter. We now have three meanings for the word amend. We can now think about word opposites for the word amend and the words improve, correct and alter because all four words are similar in meaning. When we find opposites for the words improve, correct and alter we will have found word opposites for the word amend.

Our second step in developing this word-opposite web is to use our experiences, dictionary and thesaurus to help us find word opposites for the words amend, improve, correct and alter. As we identify word opposites we will add them to the web. For example, we know that the word amend is similar to the word improve. And we know that the word improve means to “make something better.” If something is not made better it may worsen. So, one word that is opposite in meaning of the word improve is worsen. Therefore the word worsen will be added to the web to show that it is opposite the word amend in meaning. The beginning of our web looks like this:

```
| amend | worsen |
```

We used similar logic with the words correct and alter to come up with other word opposite meanings for the word amend. As we studied further we identified lapse, constrain and destroy as word opposites of amend and added them to the web. The web now looks like this:

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lapse</th>
<th>constrain</th>
<th>amend</th>
<th>worsen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>constrain</td>
<td>amend</td>
<td>worsen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Our next step is to find word opposites of all four words worsen, lapse, constrain and destroy or as many of the words as possible. We studied the word worsen and came up with the word better as an opposite of worsen, then poorer as an opposite of better and richer as an opposite of poorer. We stopped there to study the word lapse. We reasoned that if something lapses it is not being restored. So, a word opposite of lapse is the word restore. If something is not being restored, then, it may be neglected. Thus a word opposite of the word restore is the word neglect. Next, we studied the word constrain. Constrain
me that something is confined or not free. So, a word opposite of the word constrain is the word free. If someone is not free, then they may be enslaved. A word opposite of free is the word enslave. Next we studied the word destroy. Destroy means that something is being torn down. Usually, we think of the opposite of something being torn down as something being built. Thus, the word build is the opposite of destroy. The web now looks like this:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{enslave} \\ \text{free} \\ \text{constrain} \\
\hline \\
\text{amend} \\ \text{worsen} \\ \text{better} \\
\hline \\
\text{destroy} \\ \text{build} \\
\end{array}
\]

We studied some of the words in the web and came up with some additional word opposites. The web now looks like this:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{enslave} \\ \text{free} \\ \text{constrain} \\
\hline \\
\text{amend} \\ \text{worsen} \\ \text{better} \\
\hline \\
\text{destroy} \\ \text{build} \\
\end{array}
\]

As long as we can find words that are opposite in meaning to the words in the web, we can add those words to our web.

Now that you have studied word opposites, you can practice your knowledge and skill by developing word-opposite webs. Remember, your webs will reflect your experiences with words and your prior knowledge of words. They will also be influenced by your use of a specific dictionary and/or thesaurus. (At this time you may want to review the three types of word opposites presented earlier in Word Opposites.) Use the following words presented in Part III to develop word-opposite webs. Add as many word opposites as you can to your webs.
Webs with words of opposite meanings

positive

mischievous

By now you may feel as if you know a lot about words and how they work. That is the intent of this chapter. However, the overall goal of word study is that of accurate comprehension of written material—and that is also the intent of this book.

EVALUATION

In this chapter you have studied how to increase your word knowledge through a study of word relationships and a recognition of the importance of sight words.

As in Chapters 2 through 5, the following selections, written at varying levels of difficulty have been designed to help you measure your progress in reading. Read the following selections and circle the words that make the most sense. Pay attention to word relationships as you read. After you have finished reading and circling words in the selections, reread two of the three selections and write responses for those selections on the following copy of the Understanding Reading form. Responding to the form provides you with a second way of checking your understanding of the selections.

Check your answers after you have read the selections, circled the words and responded to the form. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Remember, that a score of 21 or more means that you are progressing very well with your reading. Record your score after each selection in the space provided.
SELECTION I

Alligators

An alligator looks like a giant lizard. It has a very long tail, huge jaws, sharp teeth, a rough hide, and short legs. An alligator floating on the water looks like a big dark log. It has a nose that is broad and blunt. It also has lower jaw teeth that stick up on each top, but you cannot see hide when it closes its side.

large. They usually live in huge water. Alligators are animal lovers. Their main mouth.

They will also eat turtles, chairs, mild, Dark

gras.

ducks, fish, and wading green.

People usually hunt alligators at night. Poachers are people who hunt giant huge animals illegally. Poachers catch their boats through the water as they look for push air

elephants envious, crab floating with a searchlight. An alligator's eyes shine like two short rubies when alligators octopus' red

hits log so the light floats them. The poacher shoots fresh alligator between the eyes either jaw.

large hacks it behind the door with an ax.

Alligators are disappearing because people are seeing them. People always hunting broiled alligator.

want them unless their hides are so blunt. Also, wetlands where alligators because valuable.

live mainly are being drained for building purposes.

close

Alligators are not as fierce as some people think. They do not usually attack people. Unless an alligator is cornered, it will usually move away. Bees kill more people than alligators.

**SELF-CHECK**

a. Check your answers.
b. Your score is
You will continue to practice your reading skills through the Understanding Reading chart. This chart offers you a concise way of taking notes about your reading as you read the lines, read between the lines and read beyond the lines.

At the top of the chart you will find four different paragraphs or passages. (1) Read the first passage. (2) Read the first question and the response about passage one. (3) Read the second question and the second response about the first passage. (4) Continue in this manner until you have read all questions and all responses to the first passage. (5) Read the second passage. (6) Follow the same steps to complete the second passage as you did for the first. (7) Follow those same steps for the third and the fourth passages. (8) Reread the entire chart so that you will become more familiar with how to use the chart. Now read through the chart with us.

Take time to practice using the chart. We have inserted short passages and charts with blank spaces for your practice. (1) Read the first passage. (2) Reread the passage and write responses to the nine questions. The response to your first question is your main idea or theme of the passage. It tells you what the focus of your passage is about. Therefore, you may answer that question by indicating that each sentence or each paragraph refers to certain persons, ideas, or things. The second question asks for details about the persons, ideas, or things. The third question asks you to think beyond what was written and indicate what the writer could have meant. The fourth question asks you to compare or recognize those things that were similar. The fifth question asks you to consider how things were listed, what was first, second, and so on. The sixth question asks you to consider if some things made other things happen. The seventh question asks you to look for examples that help to explain ideas. The eighth question asks you to consider why the passage was written. When you think about why something is written you are better able to put it in context. The ninth question asks you if you can use the information. Overall, these nine questions will help you to group information from passages so that you can better understand and remember the content of passages. (3) Reread your responses. Your responses may serve as your notes about the passage.

Read the second passage and follow the same steps that you followed for the first passage.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage 1</th>
<th>Passage 2</th>
<th>Passage 3</th>
<th>Passage 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Newspapers help people who are new to the city learn their way around. They run ads that tell where to buy, sell or rent things. Jobs are listed there and they tell people where to go for fun.</td>
<td>Magazine ads play a major role in the nation's spending habits. When a product is heavily advertised in magazines, its sales often increase dramatically. Products not heavily advertised run the risk of being left on the shelf. Magazine ads can make a real difference in sales.</td>
<td>Diet-conscious Americans eat less meat.</td>
<td>As Mary and Paul walked along the beach they held hands and talked quietly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. **What or who is it about?**
   - Each sentence refers to how newspapers help people.
   - Each sentence refers to how magazine ads help sell products.
   - The sentence is about diet-conscious Americans.
   - The sentence is about Mary and Paul.

2. **What was said about it or them?**
   - Newspapers help new city dwellers:—learn their way around,—by listing jobs,—by running ads,—by telling where to go for fun.
   - Products that are advertised in magazines sell; products not heavily advertised are left on the shelf.
   - They eat less meat.
   - They walked down the beach holding hands and talking quietly.

3. **What might have been meant?**
   - Newspapers are helpful to people who are new to the city.
   - Products advertised in magazines are likely to sell well; products not advertised may not.
   - Diet-conscious Americans eat less meat because they feel they need less meat in their diet.
   - Mary and Paul were good friends.

4. **Were things compared? What things?**
   - No
   - Yes
   - Yes
   - No

   - Products advertised in magazine ads and products not advertised in magazine ads.
   - Americans who eat less meat and Americans who eat more meat.
Benefits of Conflict

Even though conflict can be disruptive in the workplace, we cannot assume that all conflict is bad for business. Some social scientists speak of "conflict management" as a chance to improve products or time. Surely, "conflict management" is of mind, can. Surely, ideas.

One benefit from conflict took the improved thinking that may eliminate beliefs. Assume, understands. From competing among work times, Just as in sports, players are detected weaknesses. Evenly, come and strengths score revealed. In academic circles, the serious of minds and are conflict thinking never seen as a means with protecting truth and exposing traitor. In has error. Where department work business, likewise, one solution may point out weaknesses in another. Or, refined lift meeting a dispute behind two options may start a search for a better third thought that pleases all concerned.

If, Therefore, there is often a "ripoff" of hostile feelings and good ill. Unfortunately, "fallout" of dispute theory will from many conflicts. Hostile processes offset the good results when might feelings this with good otherwise grow out high such conflict. This suggests the value of controlling also.
such circles. This control of conflict can lead to desired outcomes—better ideas and conflict.

increased productivity.

**SELF-CHECK**

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is ____________________
The Study of Distributions

The first question a geographer asks about anything is, "Where is it?" Plotting the location of things or people on a map reveals their patterns of distribution. There can be no doubt that this is a very efficient way to discover areal relationships between two or more variables. But does this mean, when we ask, that geography can be defined as the study of distributions—"the where of things?" Rocks, plants, houses, tasks, all are somewhere on some earth's surface. Is the geographer supposed to plot distributional parcels of any and all objects? Where are his guide ways, his limits, in such an enterprise? There is another more important objection. Location by an object is an action and, when obvious of the object itself well, therefore, is a legitimate side of the concern attribute. One can hardly imagine why a zoologist would ignore its natural mean. However, showing the tiger close range. distribution with the tiger on a map does not make the zoologist a geographer. It comes down to this: plotting distributions is a very important procedure in

---

geography but not the distinguishing hallmark of this discipline. As a procedure it is a means to an end, not the purpose of geography.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Your score is

UNDERSTANDING READING (Directions: Reread two of the three selections which you have just completed and write your responses here.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>Passage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>What or who is it about?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>What was said about it or them?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>What might have been meant?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Were things compared? What things?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Were things listed? What was listed?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Did some things seem to make others happen? What were they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Were things explained with examples?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Was the purpose for writing to:</td>
<td>a. convince you?</td>
<td>b. inform you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Can you use the information?</td>
<td>How?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In Exercise 0 in Chapter 1 you observed some behaviors that you use as you study read. Chapters 2 and 3 provided you with some practice with writing questions and answers and organizing yourself to remember. Chapter 3 introduced you to nine questions that could be asked about the content of what you read. These questions were designed to help you focus on important information as you read. Chapter 5 presented you with some strategies for marking definitions, descriptions, examples and explanations. These markings usually signal important information found in your reading. Here, you will use your combined skills from those chapters to facilitate the development of a study-reading system. In this chapter you will organize a set of strategies into a study-reading system. You will then practice using the system as you read passages in this chapter and passages you select outside of the chapter. Your study reading will include managing your time, thinking, questioning, reading and marking and test preparation.

MANAGING STUDY

Preparing to study read requires a serious commitment. In Chapter 1, Exercise 0, you asked yourself about some of your study habits. This examination of your habits or what you do as you study can help you determine how skilled you are at studying. Self-directed study management, note taking and summarizing, finding information you need and using the writer's clues to think and learn are study-skill areas that can be developed to make you a more productive learner. The study-skills area—
managing myself or organizing for self-directed study—includes a look at your place of study, your study tools, your regularity of study and your means of studying. If most of your responses to the items under Self-Management in Exercise O were in the second or third columns, we suggest the following:

**Place of Study**

Select a place for study where you will be undisturbed. Make sure that your place of study has even lighting that is free of shadows and glare. Shadows and glare can tire your eyes and interrupt your study.

**Study Tools**

Keep your tools for study with you when you study. Your tools include paper, pencils, pens, dictionaries, thesauruses or anything that helps you achieve your study goals. These tools should be arranged so that they are accessible.

**Use of Study Time**

Plan to use your time productively. In order to do this you will need to analyze your present use of time so that you can determine what you must do to make better use of it. We suggest that you write out a schedule of your weekly activities. Your schedule should include daily times for study in your study place.

Before developing your schedule, read through the following schedules. Schedule A and Schedule B are schedules that were filled out by students when they were asked to show how they used their time during the week. Schedules AA and BB are reworked schedules to show a more efficient use of time. Notice that schedules AA and BB students have indicated what they study and whether their study time is used for preparation of an assignment or review. Some activities, such as television (TV) watching, have been changed or eliminated to make more time for study. Leisure reading has been added.

Schedule C is a blank schedule. Use Schedule C to prepare a schedule for yourself. Your schedule should include times for study, rest, meals, family duties, work, classes, recreation, civic responsibilities, and so on. Write your schedule in pencil so that you can erase and change it as you find more productive ways to use your time.

**Suggested Study Session**

You will need to pace yourself during study time. Within a 50-minute study session you can divide your work into smaller, timed segments. For example, you may give yourself a specific amount of time to read, mark and study each section of your assignment. At first you may not fit the work into your designated time slots, but your intent to follow the schedule and your repeated thoughtful practice is likely to make this system work very well for you. After 50 minutes of study it is a good idea to take a five- to ten-minute rest. During your rest break, you should stand, walk
## Managing Study

### Schedule A—Full-time Student

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>DRESS, EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TRAVEL TO CLASS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>ERRANDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>ERRANDS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>CLASS</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td>LAB</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>LAB</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>FREE TIME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td></td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>FREE TIME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td>CLUB</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>FREE TIME</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>FREE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>SOCIAL ACTIVITY</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Mon</td>
<td>Tue</td>
<td>Wed</td>
<td>Thu</td>
<td>Fri</td>
<td>Sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DRESS, EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>TRAVEL TO CAMPUS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: PHYS ED (LECTURE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: PHYS ED (LECTURE)</td>
<td>CLASS: PHYS ED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TV SPORTS OR OTHER</td>
<td></td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>WORK-STUDY</td>
<td>CLASS: CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>(LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>JOB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LAB: CHEM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TENNIS CLUB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TRAVEL</td>
<td>TRAVEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>HOME</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>EAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SOCIAL</td>
<td>FOOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td></td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
<td>CHEM (LECT., DIS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACTIVITY</td>
<td>FOOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OR LEISURE</td>
<td></td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
<td></td>
<td>READ</td>
<td>READ</td>
<td>READ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
<td>SLEEP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Schedule B—Part-time Student

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>GET UP</td>
<td>GET DRESSED AND PREPARE MEAL</td>
<td>GET UP &amp; PREPARE MEAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>TRAVEL TO WORK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>GET UP &amp; PREPARE MEAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>PREPARE MEALS AND EAT</td>
<td>WORK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FAMILY DUTIES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td>CHURCH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>FREETIME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>TRAVEL TO CLASS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TRAVEL HOME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td>CLASS: ENGLISH</td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td>CLASS: ENGLISH</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>TRAVEL HOME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td>TV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td>STUDY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Schedule BB—Part-time Student

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Sun</th>
<th>Mon</th>
<th>Tue</th>
<th>Wed</th>
<th>Thu</th>
<th>Fri</th>
<th>Sat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>DRESS, PREPARE MEAL, EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>TRAVEL TO WORK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td>DRESS, PREPARE MEAL, EAT</td>
<td>WORK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td>CHURCH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td>LEISURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td>TV SPORTS OR OTHER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td>LEISURE ACTIVITIES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>TRAVEL TO CLASS</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>TRAVEL HOME</td>
<td>EAT</td>
<td>CLINIC ACTIVITY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>CLASS: ENGLISH</td>
<td>CLASS: PSYCH</td>
<td>CLASS: ENGLISH</td>
<td>FAMILY, TV LEISURE, READING</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td>FAMILY</td>
<td>TRAVEL HOME</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>FAMILY ACTIVITIES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW, ESSAY</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW, ASSIGN</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW, ASSIGN</td>
<td>SAME AS</td>
<td>CLINIC DUTIES OR SOCIAL ACTIVITIES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW LECTURE, ASSIGN</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW, ASSIGN</td>
<td>STUDY: ENG, REVIEW, ASSIGN</td>
<td>SAME AS</td>
<td>CLINIC ACTIVITY</td>
<td>SOCIAL ACTIVITIES</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sun</td>
<td>Mon</td>
<td>Tue</td>
<td>Wed</td>
<td>Thu</td>
<td>Fri</td>
<td>Sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7-8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
around or stretch. These activities can help to relieve fatigue or tension that may have built up from study ing as you sat. They may also refresh you so that you can work for a longer period of time. Following your rest period you can select a different subject to study or continue to work on the assignment you have started. Some subject areas may require longer than 50 minutes of study a day, so use the amount of time you need. You may find that some subjects are more difficult for you than others and they require more time and attention.

Handling a Study Assignment

Start with setting your objectives for using your time. If you have a general schedule, you may already have determined which subject you will study and the type of studying you must do. Next, determine how you will achieve your specific study objectives within the time available. For example, assume that you have received an assignment for your Psychology class on Monday. The assignment is to read a chapter, answer five questions about the chapter and be ready for discussion of that chapter during your next class period. Your next class period is Wednesday. This means that you have two days to prepare your assignment. Your task, now, is to work time into your schedule for handling that assignment. Following is a suggested format for working through your assignment.

Suppose that your study periods for studying psychology are 7:00–8:00 on Monday and Tuesday evenings. During the Monday evening study period, read and think about the questions so that you can determine what to concentrate on when you read. Then, read and mark your textbook. During your Tuesday evening study session review your markings and write answers to the assigned questions. On Wednesday during your 30-minute break just before class you can review the questions and answers and as many of your textbook markings as you have time for.

Notice that we suggested that you complete the assignment in two sessions. There is a good reason for suggesting two shorter sessions rather than one long session. First, the shorter session allows you to work refreshed. Second, working on an assignment in two sessions allows you to space your practice. Spaced practice has been demonstrated to be more helpful than one long practice when you want to learn and remember information. Each time that you study the same information after a day or more you become more and more familiar with it. When you study information this way you are more likely to remember it when you need to.

Your Body

As you plan to manage yourself so that you can utilize your time to its fullest, include appropriate eating habits (morning, noon and evening meals) and enough sleep and exercise to maintain a healthy active body. Your body needs care, so you must fuel, rest and exercise it. When your body is well fed, exercised and rested it allows you to concentrate on your studies.

THINKING AND SKIMMING

Study reading is purposeful. Directed thinking serves to formulate purposes as we search for information in written material. And, skimming can be an active reflection
of the directed thinking that we do as we study read. Purposeful directed thinking is done when we decide to read with a particular goal in mind. We may set the goal or it may be set by someone else. For example, assume that an instructor has returned a recent test to you and has incorrectly marked a five-point question wrong. Here, you can apply the skimming element of the study-reading system for your benefit. You can skim your textbook to find the specific information that proves that your answer is accurate before you ask the instructor to reevaluate your answer. In this instance you have set your goal for using your textbook. Your goal was to find specific information to verify your answer. In another instance your instructor may direct you to read and answer a list of questions that summarize the contents of a chapter in your textbook. When the instructor makes the reading assignment, the instructor has set the goal. Further, the goal is different from the one you set about the test question in that the instructor asked you to seek a broader range of information. Still, the application of a study-reading system based on purpose-directed thinking can help you achieve both goals.

Skimming (as used in this book) is achieved by thoughtfully searching written material with one of two goals in mind. The first goal relates to the example of verifying the test answer—the rapid identification of specific information. The second goal relates to the reading as a summarizing example—the rapid determination of the nature of ideas found in written material. In other words, the second goal is to get the general idea or “gist” of what is presented. Thinking and skimming then is a purpose-directed reading activity.

Productive readers ask questions. The more questions you raise about what you read, the more productive you are likely to be as a reader. In Chapters 2 and 3 you practiced asking questions about the content of what you read. In this chapter, you will have the opportunity to use your questioning skills in the development of your study-reading system. Your study-reading system should encourage you to raise and answer questions systematically until your purposes are met.

Questions in your study-reading system may be formulated by using titles and subtitles of chapters in your textbooks and articles which you read. For example, from a chapter you may use a title such as “The Location and Function of Capitals,” and subtitles such as “Regional Capitals” and “Natural Capitals” to formulate questions. Questions about the title may be “Where are capitals located?” and “What are some functions of capitals?” Questions about the subtitles may be “What is a regional capital?” and “What is a natural capital?”

In addition to those questions that you raise about titles and subtitles, you can ask those questions presented in the Understanding Reading chart (Chapter 3). After you have asked your questions, write answers for them as you read. Later you can organize your answers into study notes so that you can easily review and recall the information you need.

We have used the following article, Aspirin Consumption, to demonstrate the process that asks the reader to: (1) raise questions, (2) read, (3) write answers to questions raised and (4) write study notes that can be used, if necessary, in preparation for test taking. Titles and subtitles have been converted to or used as the basis for generating questions. As more specific information was needed, the Understanding Reading chart’s questions were added. Study the example by first reading the questions we wrote. Second, read a section of the article. Third, read the questions
Aspirin Consumption

Who consumes aspirin? Americans take over 20 billion aspirin tablets a year. Aspirin also is a significant ingredient in many prescription drugs and in over-the-counter medicines such as cough and cold remedies. Daily consumption of aspirin in the country amounts to more than 20 tons. That makes aspirin America's most widely used drug.

What was said about them? They take more than 20 tons of aspirin a day.

USEFULNESS OF ASPIRIN

How is aspirin useful? Aspirin is a remarkably useful drug. It's well known that it lowers fever temperatures rapidly and is a superior drug for relieving minor aches and pains. Aspirin is the first drug of choice to reduce the pain and inflammation of rheumatoid arthritis. Its effectiveness in reducing inflammation also makes it important in the treatment of rheumatic fever.

Recent studies have shown that aspirin appears to help reduce the risk of stroke in men who have had attacks in which symptoms suggesting stroke appear and then fade fairly rapidly.

How is aspirin useful?
— it lowers fever
— it relieves pain
— it reduces inflammation
— it can help reduce the risk of stroke

DANGERS OF ASPIRIN

What are the dangers of aspirin? Because it is so widely used people tend to think there are no risks in taking aspirin. It is true that it is relatively safe when used as directed but, like any other drug aspirin has a potential for harm. For instance, aspirin can cause heartburn, dyspepsia, stomach discomfort, nausea, and vomiting, as well as stomach ulcers, erosion of and bleeding from the lining of the stomach, and even gastrointestinal hemorrhage. Bleeding of the stomach lining causes no obvious effects in most cases, but when aspirin is taken over a long period, there sometimes is enough loss of blood to cause iron deficiency anemia.

(Even though there are four paragraphs under this subtitle, we found the answer to our question in the first paragraph.)

What are the dangers of aspirin? It can cause many problems. Some problems are: heartburn, nausea, vomiting, and iron deficiency anemia.

(For the remaining paragraphs, we used questions from the "Understanding My Reading" chart.)

What or who is this about?
What was said about it or them?

Aspirin not only initiates bleeding, but it can prolong bleeding. In the normal individual this causes no problem, but aspirin should be avoided by people who are expecting to undergo surgery or who have vitamin K deficiency or hemophilia. Patients taking anticoagulants—drugs that thin the blood—should avoid aspirin, unless their doctor orders it, as should those who have liver disease. Severe liver damage can limit the production of prothrombin, a blood clotting factor.

What or who is this about?
—people who should avoid aspirin
What was said about it or them?
— they shouldn't take it if they are expecting to undergo surgery
— they shouldn't take it if they have vitamin K deficiency

What or who is this next paragraph about?
What was said about it or them?

Aspirin interferes with blood clotting and, if taken in the last 3 months of pregnancy, can prolong pregnancy and labor and cause bleeding before and after delivery.

What or who is this about?
— problems aspirin can cause
What was said about it?
— it can interfere with blood clotting
— it can prolong pregnancy
— it can cause bleeding before and after delivery

What or who is this last paragraph about?
What was said about it or them?
Were things listed? What?

As few as 12 tablets of aspirin a day can induce mild poisoning called "salicylism." This condition is characterized by a variety of symptoms including headache, dizziness, ringing in the ears, difficulty in hearing, dimness of vision, and drowsiness. More severe poisoning can disturb the central nervous system, cause skin eruptions, and alter the acid-base balance, making the person's breath smell like acetone or nail polish remover. Luckily for the aspirin user, ringing in the ears is a warning sign that too much of the drug has been consumed.

What is this about?— aspirin can cause poisoning
What was said about it?— as few as 12 a day can poison you
Were things listed? What?— some clues to poisoning were listed as: dizziness, ringing in the ears, drowsiness.

Now, reread the questions and answers in the article. We have rewritten our notes to make them easier for us to remember. Read through our rewritten notes.
Study Notes—
- Americans consume about 20 tons of aspirin a day.

Usefulness of Aspirin—
- aspirin lowers fever
- aspirin relieves pain
- aspirin reduces inflammation
- aspirin can help reduce the risk of stroke

Dangers of Aspirin—
- aspirin can cause many problems
- some problems are: heartburn, nausea, vomiting and iron deficiency anemia
- people should avoid aspirin when, (a) they are expecting to undergo surgery, and (b) they have a vitamin K deficiency
- aspirin may interfere with blood clotting
- aspirin can prolong pregnancy
- aspirin can cause bleeding before and after delivery
- aspirin can cause poisoning
- as few as 12 a day can poison you
- some clues to poisoning are: headache, dizziness, ringing in the ears, drowsiness

What does this information mean to me?
I should be careful about taking a drug that can cause the problems that aspirin can cause.

NOTETAKING

A useful study-reading system includes notetaking. Recording and organizing information that you need to remember and use is a skill that you practice constantly. You do it informally when you remind yourself to shop for some needed item, when you count the number of buses that have passed you by as you walk toward your destination and when you estimate the number of people attending a concert so that you can tell your friends about it. When you take these unwritten notes during everyday experiences you observe, analyze and store information. Similarly, when you take notes as you read you follow the same observation, analysis and information-storing pattern.

The purpose of taking notes is to record needed information accurately and quickly so that it is available to you when you need it. One efficient way to do this is to take notes directly in the book you are reading. And, a second efficient approach to notetaking is to record useful information in a looseleaf notebook.

Notetaking and Bookmarking

Notes can be written in the margins and in other spaces in the books to highlight important information. Also, you can mark and underline important information.
Earlier in this book we suggested that you use certain symbols to mark specific kinds of information as you read. These markings can be combined with a number of others that fit your needs as you take notes in specific classes. For example, we suggested that you mark definitions with def, examples with ex, descriptions with des, and that you underline explanations. In addition to these marks you may want to number, as 1, 2, 3 and so on, a series of important facts or ideas; write a question mark near information you do not clearly understand; and mark with a star any information you believe to be of special importance. Study the following marked article. Particularly, study the important marked information so that you may better understand the article.

The Sodium Content of Your Food

INTRODUCTION

Sodium is a mineral element necessary for proper body function. It is involved in maintaining blood volume and cellular osmotic pressure and in transmitting nerve impulses.

Body needs for sodium are not great. Intakes of 1,100 to 3,300 milligrams of sodium per day are considered safe and adequate for the healthy adult by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Academy of Sciences—National Research Council. Most dietary sodium is found in the form of sodium chloride, the compound we know as table salt, which is 40 percent sodium and 60 percent chloride. One teaspoon of salt contains approximately 2,000 milligrams of sodium. Current estimates of daily sodium intake by individuals are between 2,300 to 6,900 milligrams (about 1 to 3 teaspoons or 6 to 17 grams of salt). Many Americans consume more sodium than they need.

EFFECT OF EXCESS SODIUM

Excess sodium in the diet is believed to contribute to high blood pressure or hypertension in some people. Control of body weight and restriction of sodium intake from food, drinks, and drugs are among treatments prescribed by physicians to control high blood pressure.

SOURCES OF SODIUM

In addition to the salt we knowingly sprinkle on our food, many foods contain sodium as a part of their normal chemical composition. Household staples like baking powder and baking soda are sodium compounds. Some popular flavoring agents high in sodium are soy sauce, Worcestershire sauce, catsup, pickles, olives, garlic, onion, and celery salts.

Many processed foods contain added sodium. Salted or brined meats and fish are obviously higher in salt content than the uncured forms. Many canned vegetables are packed in salt solution or brine.

Frozen vegetables are usually processed without added salt. However, starchy vegetables like lima beans and peas are frequently soaked in brine before freezing. Frozen vegetables with added sauces, mushrooms, or nuts are higher in sodium than the plain varieties.

Canned and frozen fruits are not usually processed with added salt, but some companies add small amounts of salt to prevent darkening of some fruits and to enhance flavor of applesauce. Some canned and frozen fruits, and most canned whole tomatoes, are dipped in sodium hydroxide so that they can be easily peeled. This process causes these foods to have higher sodium levels than are found in the fresh foods. Canned and bottled citrus drinks are sometimes buffered with sodium citrate. Sodium ion exchange is used in processing some wines to reduce sediment and clarify the product.

Chemical ingredients which contain sodium may be added during food processing. Some examples of these ingredients are monosodium glutamate or MSG (a flavor enhancer), sodium saccharin, (a sweetener), sodium phosphates (emulsifiers, stabilizers, buffers), sodium citrate (a buffer), sodium caseinate (a thickener and binder); and sodium benzoate and sodium nitrite (preservatives).

Another source of sodium is drinking water. The sodium content of drinking water varies considerably throughout the country. This variation also affects the sodium content of soft drinks and beer produced and bottled at different locations.

Water softeners raise the sodium content of water—the harder the water, the greater amount of sodium needed to soften it. In most states, the State department of public health can supply information on the sodium content of public water supplies and provide help in getting water from individual wells or water supplies analyzed.

IMPORTANCE OF READING LABELS

It is especially important for persons on salt-restricted diets to read ingredient labels carefully to see which, if any, sodium compounds have been included in processed foods. Those items listed first on the label are present in the largest amounts. Nutritional information on labels of some foods, such as breakfast cereals, shows sodium values. Some over-the-counter drugs, particularly antacids, contain sodium in significant amounts. Read labels carefully and ask your physician about using such drugs.

POTASSIUM AND HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE

Many patients with high blood pressure take diuretics and are advised to increase their potassium intake to replenish that lost in the increased urine volume. Bananas and orange juice are frequently recommended for their potassium content. Most fresh vegetables, fruits, legumes, and uncured meats are also good sources of potassium and add only small amounts of sodium to the diet.

If you are thinking of using a potassium substitute for common salt, you should consult your physician before doing so.

Notetaking in Your Notebook

We suggest that you use a looseleaf notebook when you take notes outside your textbook for at least four reasons. First, a notebook helps to keep notes together and in order. Notes written on slips of paper are easily lost. Second, notes kept in a looseleaf notebook can be supplemented or easily added to from various sources. For example, when your reading assignment and the instructor’s lecture covers
similar information, you can place the notes from both together so that when you study you have all the related information readily available. Third, when you prepare to study for a test or quiz you can remove the notes from your notebook and rearrange them in various ways as you study. Fourth, you may find that when you review your notes, both from books and lectures, you can combine them into a more accurate and precise record of information. You can do this easily by rewriting and removing the old ‘less useful notes.

Your notes are likely to be most useful to you if you (1) date them, (2) label them or tell what they are about, (3) list their source, including the book or article and page numbers, (4) routinely use textbook marking symbols combined with a system of additional symbols (abbreviations, ?, and so on) that you will recognize even a day or so after you have written the notes, (5) write legibly, (6) leave space between ideas so that if you need to add new or clarifying information you can do so easily.

What and how much should you write? What is written should depend on what you expect to do with the notes. The amount of detail is also dependent on your intended use. Thus, if your notes are to be used in preparation for taking a test requiring knowledge of many facts, your notes should contain the necessary details. On the other hand, if you are preparing to discuss broad issues or general ideas your notes can be written as a series of short summaries. Another factor that determines what you write is your previous knowledge of the subject. When your previous knowledge is less than sufficient, then new information will need to be written to include more detail than familiar information.

Assume that the following notes from The Sodium Content of Your Food article represent new information. Study the notes so that you will see how notes can be written in your notebook. After you have studied the notes, select an article or textbook chapter to study. Make notes in the actual article or chapter and also in your notebook.

Reading Notes Recorded in Notebook

Date: 2/12/___   Source: Article   For Class: Chem 25
Title: The Sodium content of your Food
Intro
Sodium (Na) mineral used by body to
—maintain blood volume

dict. def. osmotic pressure—the force exerted by a solvent passing through
a semipermeable membrane in osmosis, equal to the solution in order
to prevent passage of the solvent into it (Webster's New World Diction-
ary, p. 1006, 1974) ?? need to check meaning of def with instructor

—carry nerve impulses
Body does not need much sodium
—1,100 to 3,300 mg a day suggested by Food & Nutrit Brd of Natl Acad of
Science
—1 tsp salt (NaCl) = 2,000 mg
—most Amer eat more

Effect of Excess Na
Chapter 7. Study Reading

---contributes to high blood pressure which may be controlled by keeping weight down
getting less Na in food, drinks, drugs

Sources of Na
—salt (NaCl) on food
Na in foods
processed foods
  sauces; garlic, celery, & other salts
  olives, pickles, salted meat, fish
  frozen vegetables sorted in brine (salted water)
  lima beans, other starchy types
canned fruits & veget
NaCl added to stop darkening (applesauce)
" used to help peel (tomatoes)
canned citrus drinks
Sodium nitrite (NaNO₂)
Other agents added to food
  MSG, Sacch,
Water
  Drinking water
    Amount varies place to place
    soft drinks & beer varies accordingly
Water Softeners
  Na added to soften hard water
State dept of Health provided info
  on levels in specific water sources

Importance of Reading Labels
—especially for persons on salt-free diets
—non-prescript drugs often contain high Na levels
—see Dr. before taking these

High Blood Pressure (HBP & Potassium (K))
—HBP patients often take diuresics to get rid of extra fluid—low level of K results
—Eat fresh veget & fruit (Bananas, peas, beans) & drink orange juice to replace K
—However, see Dr. before using K for NaCl

Summary of notes: Sodium (Na), a major part of table salt (NaCl) is necessary for body functioning in small amounts (1,100 to 3,300 mg a day). But taken in large amounts, Na can be a major contributor to high blood pressure. Na is found in food, particularly processed food, drinking water, and in some over-the-counter drugs. Persons with high blood pressure are urged to read labels carefully so that they can reduce Na intake by adding less table salt and watching the intake of foods and water that contain excessive amounts of Na.

STEPS IN STUDY-READING SYSTEM

Throughout this chapter we have referred to a study-reading system. That system is described in the various sections of this chapter (Thinking and Skimming, Question-
As You Take the Test

...ing, Notetaking in your text and Notetaking in your notebook). Collectively those subsections represent the study-reading system. As you study refer to the following six steps to ensure that you are using the system correctly.

Step 1. Skim the entire section of the material to be read to find out how much information is included and to determine what the writer views as important. Heavy or attention-getting print, introductions, summaries, charts, graphs and pictures usually represent information the writer believes is important.

Step 2. Write and answer questions about the heavy or special print and other attention-getting features mentioned in Step 1.

Step 3. Ask yourself if you have enough information from your written material to serve your purpose. For example: Do I have enough information to: (a) pass a test with questions about specific details, (b) write a detailed summary, (c) contribute information to a discussion and (d) solve a problem?

Step 4. Use the Understanding Reading chart to systematically ask and answer additional questions if your purpose was not met in Step 3.

Step 5. Write your study notes using information from your questions and answers and any additional reading you needed to do.

Step 6. Review by reciting the information until you “know it cold.”

Taking Tests

Test preparation begins with systematic study. One effective way to prepare for taking a classroom test is to use your study-reading system from the very beginning. This will allow you to become thoroughly familiar with the material. One or two days before test time, develop your own test of the information and take it. Use your marked textbooks and notes to check your answers. If other students are available who will take the same test, exchange and discuss notes with them.

It is important that you learn and remember the information very well. You can do this with repeated review of the material even when you feel you already know it. The repeated review of information will give you the confidence you need to take the real test successfully. Then, you can use more of your energy carefully reading, thinking and responding accurately to each test item.

Most people experience some anxiety about taking a test, even those who study systematically. However, once the test has begun, those who studied well are likely to see the benefits of their study as they confidently answer question after question, thereby, reducing their anxiety considerably.

Knowing the content of a test you must take will get you past a major hurdle. However, it is also important to be aware of a series of factors that can make the difference between a good and a better grade or even a passing and a failing grade. Read carefully and consider the following.

Directions

Understand the directions. Read your directions carefully. If there is a word or group of words that you do not understand, ask for an explanation. After the examiner explains the word, restate the meaning in your own words to the examiner. Then ask the examiner if your restatement is accurate.
Chapter 7. Study Reading

Time

Be aware of the length of time that you have for the test so that you can divide your time in a way that allows you to complete as much of the test as possible. Plan to use more time on those sections of the test that yield the most credit. So, look over your test immediately and make some general decisions about how much time you will use on each section. Do not lose points when you do not know the answer. Respond to each item you are sure of. If you have the time later, make careful guesses about those you think you know.

Read the Test

Read through the entire test quickly. As you read, place a check mark (✓) beside the test items that you can respond to immediately.

Answer the Test Items

First, answer the test items that you checked (✓) during your first reading. Second, study and reason through answers to the other test items that you think you know. An educated or reasoned guess is likely to gain points for you. If you leave blanks, no points can be gained. However, find out if you will be penalized for guessing before the test begins. Then decide whether or not you can afford to guess answers.

If some test items are worth more credit than others, answer them early in the test period. When you have responded to all the items that you think you can answer correctly use the remaining time to study and answer the items that are the most difficult for you. If you take the time to remember that your purpose for taking the test is to show what you know about a subject, you will want to take the time to decide how to demonstrate your knowledge effectively.

Words to be Aware of in Tests

As you read test items look for two types of words. One type will tell you how to respond or how to answer test items. Another type will change the item meaning. Underline these words to remind yourself to read and interpret them carefully. We have listed, explained and provided item examples of some words that frequently appear in tests. The words define, discuss, compare and contrast, and list are words that you are to respond to in a very specific way. Study the following examples carefully.

a. Define—requires you to tell the meaning of or to state the characteristics of the thing to be defined.

Test item: Define the term cubism.
Answer: Cubism can be defined as a type of art that uses geometric figures, particularly cubes, in abstract arrangements. The arrangements tend to represent ideas in an abstract way rather than present a realistic picture of them.
b. Discuss—requires you to tell what is known about a person, place, condition or thing.

Test Item: Discuss the climate of the port city of Belém, Brazil.
Answer: The climate at Belém, Brazil is tropical. There is a great deal of rain and the temperature averages about 80°F. Most of the rain occurs between January and June. Further...

c. Compare and contrast—These words require you to tell how things are alike and different.

Test Item: Compare the merchandising practices of wholesale and retail stores.
Answer: Wholesale and retail stores function in both similar and different ways. Their practices are similar in that they both sell goods. They function differently in that wholesale stores are likely to sell at lower cost per item than retail but, on the other hand, may require that a larger volume of items be purchased. Other similarities and differences are...

d. List—requires that you write a series of items that may be numbered.

Test Item: List the states in the United States that border Mexico.
Answer: The states that border Mexico are:
1. California
2. Arizona
3. New Mexico
4. Texas

Notice that we restated the test item in our answers first. Then we answered the item as directly as possible in the next sentences. You need to say as much as you can as soon as you can when answering questions like those above.

Other words that you need to be aware of are those that change the meaning of an item. We have underlined such words in the following test items.

a. Test Item: All the characteristics listed below are common to heat except one.
   1. causes objects to contract
   2. signals a rise in temperature
   3. changes matter states
   4. radiates waves of energy

The answer is number one. Notice that we have underlined two words in this test item. These words must be read and interpreted carefully to ensure a correct answer. The word all means just that. However, the word except warns us that meaning of all will be modified or changed in some way. Careful reading of this item tells you that you must select one answer only.

b. Test Item: Photosynthesis, the biological process that uses light in the nourishment of some plants, does not occur in the:
Chapter 7. Study Reading

1. Philodendron
2. mushroom
3. fern
4. dandelion

The answer is number two. Photosynthesis occurs in green leafy plants. Notice that we underlined the word, not. This word changes the sentence so that it is opposite in meaning.

c. Test Item: Columbus sailed to the new world in three ships: the Niña, the Pinta and the Mayflower.

The answer is false. When you read true or false items be sure to read the entire item before answering. Frequently, if a series of facts is listed (Niña, Pinta, and so on) in an item such as this one, one of the facts will not fit and will cause the statement to be false.

d. Test Item: According to Jean Piaget, the Swiss psychologist, children learn about their world in six developmental stages. The first of these is the________________________stage.

The answer is sensorimotor. Notice that this item required that a statement be completed. The words according to limited your answer to Piaget's developmental levels.

e. Test Item: Which of the characteristics listed below represent the results of the presence of heat?
   1. causes objects to contract
   2. signals a rise in temperature
   3. radiates waves of energy
   4. only 1 and 2
   5. only 2 and 3

The answer is 5, only 2 and 3. Notice that which and the $ at the end of characteristics are underlined. These signal that your answer could represent more than one characteristic. The word only emphasizes the idea that the answer includes those characteristics cited (2 and 3) and no others.

EVALUATION

In this chapter you have studied how to organize a set of strategies into a study-reading system.

As in Chapters 2 through 6, the following selections, written at varying levels of difficulty, have been designed to help you measure your progress in reading. Read the following selections and circle the words that make the reading make sense. Use your study-reading system to help you better understand the selections. After you have finished reading and circling words in the selections, reread two of the three selections and write study notes in the space provided. Writing study notes can provide you with a clearer understanding of the selection.

Check your answers after you have read the selections, circled the words and written study notes. The highest possible score that you can earn for each selection is 25. Remember, that a score of 21 or more means that you are progressing very well with your reading. Record your score after each selection in the space provided.
Open Dating

Many manufacturers date their products to help consumers obtain food that is fresh and wholesome. This process is called open dating. Four kinds of open dating are oftentimes used. It helps to know what kind of dating is used and what each kind means.

Pack Date—This is the day fresh was manufactured, processed or packaged. This date tells how strict food is when you buy it. The importance of lifted. All them date to consumers depends on how quickly food spoils. Most drafted and this it stored packaged foods have no long shelf life when lined under dry, cool conditions. A hold that shelf. Pull or Sell—Therefore is the last date has the product should be stopped, was sold. cleaned correct assuming it has been stored and handled in the long way. The pull date product task belongs for some storage time around the home refrigerator. Cold cream, ice allows in dry, oven examples cream, milk, and liver fresh dough products are most of foods with refrigerated dates. pull notes. sold.

Expiration Date—This is the date nut should be eaten or hungryl. Baby food shelved. timely

---

are formula and yeast some examples of products that illness carry expiration dates. may top cool

is

Freshness Date—This time similar to the expiration date but may allow for can

normal home storage. Some bakery products that have a freshness date are sold

at a reduced price for a short time after the expiration date.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is
Temperature Distribution\(^4\)

The atmosphere is largely transparent to incoming solar radiation. Hence, most of the sunlight heats the ground, not the air. How hot the ground stops getting depends on how much sunlight is reflected and how much heat is conducted outdoors. When sliding about the ground, if the air is dark (a poor reflector) and conducts moist climate poorly, the temperature can come extremely high. Sand is even poor heat conductor, mainly because air is trapped among several grains. Air is an especially poor conductor, which is why mixed use double-paned windows with fixed hot smoke air space between to keep heat in buildings.

After the ground gets hot, the water in contact with the cloud begins surely to warm by reflection. However, since air is nearly a poor conductor, it spatial conduction. Using on nearly such the time ground mild were the blue mechanism. Conduction does heat very air very close to the only fine ground, perhaps 0.04 centimeters above it. This heated air expands and becomes so light that the air above the next layer is actually denser. This heavy air begins to sink in certain places, while the warm, light air rises in others.

These upward- and downward-moving bubbles of warm and cool air are called convection currents. These convection currents heat the air higher up by carrying hot air upward in the thermals and mixing with the air aloft. The convection currents can actually be seen, because the associated variations in density cause shimmering of light.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is
Common Sense

Trial-and-error answers—including answers which seem to be self-evident—lead to common-sense solutions. It is not clear how a person uses common sense to arrive at tentative answers, since the process is not structured beyond the use of intuition to generate a personally acceptable explanation.

Also common sense does not generate the same answer to the same question for everyone using that approach. For some last reason alone common-sense degrees lack validity for making general and reliable decisions. for use more. When questions were often, knowledge was created. As stoppage, was intuition gained knowledge of the common, they became aware of how orderliness, people to clear below ness within the universe also found that some common-sense answers allowed and rare predictions to be lead with reasonable degrees of accuracy. Prediction remains made in ordering. Nevertheless, when common time alone generally, even sense silence is used to answer conclusions, as the questions become lacking together generation sophisticated, less accuracy is offered in the resulting predictions. Careful found Making process lacks necessary structure.

To however has A major defect in attacking degrees through common-sense alone sees Lost questions is succeeding that the varying human element of subjectivity is involved in the process.

The observer may consciously or unconsciously select evidence to support
what he or she already believes, may generalize from insufficient data, or may
knowingly or unknowingly ignore important contributing factors.

SELF-CHECK
a. Check your answers.
b. Your Score is
1. My study notes for Selection

2. My study notes for Selection
Chapters 1 through 7 provided you with opportunities to assess and expand your knowledge and skill in reading and studying. Specifically, Chapter 1 helped you to "get to know" yourself as a reader and learner. In Chapters 2 and 3 you had an opportunity to use strategies to help you understand what you read by focusing on the meaning of what is stated, the meaning of what might be suggested by what is stated and the ability to use information gained from what is written. In Chapters 4 and 6 you focused your attention on understanding word parts and understanding word relationships. Language styles were examined in Chapter 5. That chapter was designed to increase your awareness of language styles and their impact on reading and study. Chapter 7 guided you to develop your study-reading system. These seven chapters provided you with an opportunity to understand and practice productive reading behaviors. Additionally, each chapter provided you with a means of monitoring your reading progress through reading selections that varied in reading difficulty from easy pre-college to advanced college levels. In this chapter you will assess your progress based on instructional strategies described in Chapters 2 through 7. Also, if necessary, you will be directed to apply the strategies to additional reading materials so that you can continue to develop productive reading study behavior.

The following activity is designed to assess your reading progress. Specifically, you will be using those reading skills studied in Chapters 2, 3, and 5. In those chapters
you were instructed to question the content of what is written so that you can get a clearer sense of its meaning. You were also instructed to pay attention to writers' language styles and patterns.

Read the following passage, Chemistry: A Physical Science, from beginning to end. Notice that words are deleted throughout the passage. Your task is to write in the missing words as you read. Use the information in the sentence as well as in the entire passage to help you select the words the author originally used. The words deleted from the passage are placed at the end of the passage in alphabetical order. Some words may be used in the passage more than once. A score of 15 or more means that you read the passage well by following the author's meaning. If you earn less than 15 points, restudy Chapters 2, 3 and 5. Then, select a passage of about three paragraphs from a book. Use what you know about language styles and questioning strategies to help you to understand the passage. Also, review the evaluation selections at the end of each chapter and think about your reasons for circling the words that helped you understand those readings.

Chemistry: A Physical Science

Through the ages, man has learned many things about himself and his environment. However, it was not until he started to record his discoveries and observations that modern science, as such, began. Early scientists soon started to organize and classify their discoveries and observations. This organized knowledge has developed into the fundamental_______with which we are ______today. Each important discovery_______new avenues of study, ______result being the growth_______scientific knowledge at an ______rate.

All the sciences_______be grouped into two_______divisions:

the biological sciences,_______are concerned with living_______.

their structure, life processes, _______ environment; and the physical _______, which deal with the _______ relationships about us. An _______ of basic concepts in _______ sciences helps us to _______ and appreciate the order _______ nature.

Chemistry is the _______ dealing with the structure and _______ of materials and the _______ in composition which these _______ undergo. During the present _______ it has become more _______ more evident that chemistry _______ the key to the _______ sciences. As a result, there is an increasing merger of chemical research with other sciences.

The knowledge of aore and more complex chemical structures has helped chemists make major contributions toward better understanding of the _______ life processes.

The words are: and, century, changes, composition, ever-increasing, familiar, holds, in, large, life, materials, may, natural, of, recognize, science, sciences, suggests, the, things, understanding, which.

SELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.

b. Give yourself one point for each correct answer.

c. Your number of points is _______.
d. If you earned less than 15 points, reread the directions to be sure you understood them. Then restudy chapters 2, 3 and 5.

In Chapter 4 and Chapter 6 you studied word parts and word relationships. Studying those parts and relationships allowed you to consider many other words that were related to the words you studied. In this section you will test some of your knowledge about word parts and word relationships.
Part I. Marking Words

Write the following words, mark the parts, mark the patterns on the first line across and write the words in pronounceable parts on the second line across.

Example: bitter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VCCV</th>
<th>VCCV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td>bitter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. decent
2. program
3. degrade
4. pronounce
5. feather
6. delta
7. slaughter
8. spinster
9. glaucoma
10. idiosyncrasy

JELF-CHECK

a. Check your answers.
b. Give yourself five points for each correct item. You can earn up to 50 points for the 10 items.
c. Your number of correct items is________.
d. Your number of points is________.
e. If you earned 40 points or more, you did well. If you earned less than 40 points, return to Chapter 4 and study the "Dividing Words into Smaller Parts Without the Use of the Dictionary" section. Then, use a newspaper, magazine or textbook to help you to locate two additional words for each pattern missed. Write those words and mark the patterns.
Part II. Word Meanings

A. Match the general meanings with the prefixes by writing the number of the prefix on the line before the general meaning.

Example: 0. ex-
1. equi-
2. bio-
3. mal-
4. micro-
5. bi-
6. un-
7. mis-
8. pre-
9. re-
10. mid-

0. out
1. bad
2. middle
3. wrong
4. life
5. again
6. equal
7. two
8. small
9. not
10. before

B. Write words using the prefixes in Section A and write the meanings of those words.

Example: export

1. ________
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________
8. ________
9. ________
10. ________

send out

SELF-CHECK (A and B)

a. Check your answers.

b. Give yourself two points for each correct item in Section A. You can earn a total of 20 points for the items in Section A. Give yourself five points for each correct item in Section B. You can earn a total of 50 points for the items in Section B.

c. Your number of correct items for Section A is______.
d. Your number of points for Section A is______.
e. Your number of correct items for Section B is______.
f. Your number of points for Section B is______.
Chapter 8. What Has Been Learned and What Else Can Be Done

g. If you earned more than 14 points for Section A and 35 points for Section B, you did well. If you earned less than 14 points for Section A and 35 points for Section B, return to Chapter 4 and study the Prefixes section. Then, use textbooks, magazines or a dictionary to help you to locate and write three words and their meanings for each item missed.

C. Match the general meanings with the roots by writing the number of the root on the line before the meaning.

Example: 0. -audire-
1. -phone
2. -manu-
3. -philo-
4. -scope-
5. -meter

D. Write words using the roots in Section C and write the meanings of those words.

Example: 0. audience

SELF-CHECK (C and D)

a. Check your answers.

b. Give yourself two points for each correct item in Section C. You can earn a total of 10 points in Section C. Give yourself five points for each correct item in Section D. You can earn a total of 25 points in Section D.

c. Your number of correct items for Section C is____.

d. Your number of points for Section C is____.

e. Your number of correct items for Section D is____.

f. Your number of points for Section D is____.

g. If you earned more than 8 points for Section C and 20 points for Section D, you did well. If you earned less than 8 points for Section C and 20 points for Section D, return to Chapter 4 and study the Roots section. Then, use textbooks, magazines or a dictionary to help you to locate and write three words and their meanings for each item missed.

E. Match the general meanings with the suffixes by writing the number of the suffix on the line before the meaning.

Example: 0. -hood

1. -ness

condition of being

inclined to, worthy of
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-cide</td>
<td>manner or direction of doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-able, -ible</td>
<td>an action or product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>being or quality of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fy</td>
<td>expression, theory or science of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ly</td>
<td>indicates killing of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-logy</td>
<td>indicates being</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bility, -ity</td>
<td>science or art of, practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>lack of, without</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ics</td>
<td>to cause, make or feel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F. Write words using the suffixes in Section E and write the meanings of those words.**

**Example:** 0. statehood  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statehood</td>
<td>having the position of a state</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SELF-CHECK (E and F)**

a. Check your answers.

b. Give yourself 3 points for each correct item in Section E. You can earn a total of 30 points in Section E. Give yourself 6 points for each correct item in Section F. You can earn a total of 60 points in Section F.

c. Your number of correct items for Section E is______
d. Your number of points for Section E is______
e. Your number of correct items for Section F is______
f. Your number of points for Section F is______

g. If you earned more than 21 points for Section E and 42 points for Section F, you did well. If you earned less than 21 points for Section E and 42 points for Section F, return to Chapter 4 and study the Suffixes section. Then, use a textbook, magazine or a dictionary to help you to locate and write three words and their meanings for each item missed.
Part III. Word Similarities and Opposites

A. Develop a word-similar web using the following word.

trip

B. Develop a word-opposite web using the following word.

run

SELF-CHECK (A and B)

a. Use a dictionary and thesauruses to add to and check your responses to your word-similar and word-opposite webs. You should add seven words to each web.

b. Give yourself two points for each word added to a web. Each web is worth 14 or more points.

c. Your number of words added to Section A is_____.

d. Your number of points for Section A is_____.

e. Your number of words added to Section B is_____.

f. Your number of points for Section B is_____.

231
g. If you earned less than 10 points for Section A and 10 points for Section B, return to Chapter 6 and study the Word Similarities and Word Opposites sections. Then, select two words and develop a word-similar web for one word and a word-opposite web for the other word.
In Chapter 7 you (a) organized your study habits into a study-reading system and (b) studied guidelines for taking tests. Here you will test your use of the study-reading system by analyzing the following article. First, assume that you are going to take a test on the article. Second, study it by writing questions, reading and marking the article and writing answers. Third, rewrite questions, answers and marked information into study notes.

Compare your study notes to our study notes in the answer section of this book. If your study notes included at least 80% of the content of our study notes, you did well. If your study notes are less than 80% of the content of our study notes, restudy Chapter 7. Then, select an article or a textbook chapter and study it using the study-reading system.

Toxic Shock Syndrome and Tampons

Tampons have been associated with toxic shock syndrome (TSS), a newly recognized, though rare, disease that seems to strike mainly women under 30 years of age during their menstrual periods.

Toxic shock syndrome can strike quickly and may be fatal.

Women who use tampons and experience the following flu-like symptoms during their periods should remove the tampon at once and see a doctor immediately:

- A high fever (usually 102° or higher) that comes on suddenly.
- Vomiting or diarrhea.

Within half a day, there may be dizziness or a sudden drop in blood pressure that can lead to shock. Often, patients need to be taken to a hospital to be treated, but, in any case, the disease must be treated very quickly.

There may be other symptoms, such as severe muscle aches, bloodshot eyes, or a sore throat. Also, a sunburn-like rash may appear; in a few days it will start to peel, particularly on the hands and feet.

**AVOIDING TSS**

Women can almost entirely avoid getting this disease by not using tampons. Or they can reduce their risk by alternating sanitary napkins with tampons within each day of their periods (when removing a tampon, replace it with a sanitary napkin, and vice versa).

**CAUSE OF TSS**

Toxic shock syndrome is caused by the bacterium Staphylococcus aureus. The bacterium produces a toxin, or poison, that is absorbed into the bloodstream and causes the disease.

No one knows exactly why tampons are associated with toxic shock syndrome, although many reasons have been suggested. The Government continues to investigate, as do the manufacturers.

All tampons have been associated with cases of toxic shock syndrome. However, the risk of getting TSS is low. Studies have found it affects between

---

3 and 15 out of every 100,000 menstruating women per year. At this time, there is no evidence that the disease is contagious.

Toxic shock syndrome recurs in about three out of every ten women. Those who have had the disease should not use tampons until they have checked with their physicians. One thing the doctor can do is to determine whether the bacterial infection is still present.

CURING TTS

Patients suffering from toxic shock syndrome are usually placed in intensive care units, given large amounts of fluids intravenously to combat dehydration, and treated with drugs to help raise their blood pressure.

Antibiotics—drugs usually used against infections caused by bacteria—do not appear to be effective in curing toxic shock syndrome. But antibiotics may be helpful in preventing the disease from occurring again.
## Exercise B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>named</td>
<td>most</td>
<td>protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>suffering</td>
<td>equally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>invited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saw</td>
<td>lungs</td>
<td>join</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drawing</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>using</td>
<td>caused</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>classmates</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>During</td>
<td>needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td>glands</td>
<td>shared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>mucus</td>
<td>same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>walls</td>
<td>problems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>harmless</td>
<td>causing</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant</td>
<td>in'</td>
<td>employers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poisonous</td>
<td>attack</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>becomes</td>
<td>Workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>results</td>
<td>lips</td>
<td>to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>finally</td>
<td>longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found</td>
<td>An</td>
<td>own</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercise C

Answers will vary.

Exercise D

Part I

1. ran out of gas
2. are not usually friendly
3. people of all ages
4. not clear
5. my best friend
6. old bookstore on Market street

Part II

1. my attorney’s behavior
2. dedication of the statue to his pet
3. to consolidate their many business ventures
4. Creativity is a human characteristic
5. people from various walks of life
6. an indescribable order

Exercise E

These are suggested answers.

We have provided two answers for each item. Any answer that logically follows is acceptable.
Part I

1. a. When she came into the house she was soaking wet.
   a. She wore wet clothes when she came into the house.
   b. She had fallen in some water.
   b. She had come in from a heavy rain.

2. a. A long pass was thrown by the football player.
   a. The player threw the football a long distance.
   b. The football player's team gained many yards.
   b. A football game is in progress.

3: a. The couple walked out of city hall with a smile.
   a. Two people left city hall with smiles on their faces.
   b. The couple had just married.
   b. The couple had just gotten a marriage license at city hall.

4. a. We played on the beach.
   a. At least one other person and I played on the beach.
   b. We had a good time at the beach.
   b. We had fun on the beach.

5. a. A truck carried bricks from a house by a truck.
   a. A truck was used to take bricks away from the house.
   b. A house was being demolished.
   b. The house was being torn down.

6. a. Two painters went to the church.
   a. Two men, with paint brushes and wearing white overalls went into the church.
   b. They were going to paint the church.
   b. The men are going to paint the church.

Part II

1. a. She smiled as she read the letter.
   a. She had a wide grin on her face as she read the letter.
   b. She was happy about the contents of the letter.
   b. The letter she read made her happy.

2. a. The reporters watched us as we left the courtroom with our sad faces turned away from them.
   a. Leaving the courtroom with sad faces drew the reporters' attention to us.
   b. We had lost our case.
   b. The reporters watched us to get a clue about the outcome of the case.

3. a. A nervous young man leaned toward his friend waiting for an answer.
   a. While drumming his fingers on the table, the young man leaned toward his companion and waited for an answer.
   b. The friend's response was very important to the young man.
   b. He was hoping that the answer would help him solve a problem.
Exercise F

Part I

1. a. They are places where people can eat.
   b. no, one set went to the ladies' room and one set to the men's room

2. a. being hit by a ball
   b. It held his arm so that it healed in four weeks.

3. 3, 4, 1, 5, 2

Part II

Answers may vary. A suggested answer is:

1. talk to the doctor herself because Karen would probably not tell her the truth about her illness. (Answers will vary).

2. Answers will vary

3. spouse
   polygyny means man with more than one wife
   polyandry means woman with more than one husband

Exercise H

Part I

A. Answers will vary, but all should follow logically from the sentence content. Suggested answers are: (1) sound, ring, (2) political, ruling, (3) failure, a poorly attended affair, (4) street, road, (5) mailbox, slot, (6) wall, door.

B. 1. a good place to work and keep books; a room or rooms where business is conducted
   2. swimming at an easy pace; at ease or moving smoothly
3. hung around the store; no hanging around
4. made me ill; sickening
5. walk angrily; stomped out
6. central or national government; people who work for the central government

Part II

A. Answers will vary, but all should follow logically from the sentence content. Suggested answers are: (1) umbrella, rain hat, (2) cold, allergy, (3) softly, far away, (4) sale, (5) lessen, decrease, (6) prisoner, man.

B. 1. sociable; likes people and social activities
2. huffed and puffed; out of breath
3. did not have much to say; calm or quiet or composed
4. being wealthy with being happy; the same as
5. walked silently behind; careful or cautious
6. handle their money in high inflation; carefully or wisely

Exercise I

1. ex top ness
2. shu ple
3. mitc her
4. ver ing
5. phut er
6. car long
7. pri wle
8. sar ing
9. poy er
10. friend plug
11. mis thon ment
12. whur ing
13. start chair
14. hoox er
15. clu ving
16. di pond tion
17. scream sky
18. luq kle
19. con ject ish
20. clog tle
21. non fic hood
22. gen ver
23. brief pool
24. dral ping
25. chu sle

Exercise J

1. de-; reverse; or undoing
2. dis-; lack of
3. ex-; out of or from
4. in-; not, without
5. inter-; between or among
6. mis-; wrong or error
7. non-; not
8. pre-; before
9. re-; do again
10. trans-; from one place to another
Answers

Exercise K

1. -loc-: place
2. -spect-: see
3. -graph-: write
4. -bene-: good
5. -bio-: life
6. -cred-: belief
7. -voc-: call
8. -micro-: small
9. -edu-: lead out, bring up
10. -mater-: mother

Exercise L

1. -tion: result
2. -ly: a manner of
3. -hood: condition of being
4. -logy: expression
5. -less: without or lack of
6. -er: one who
7. -ist: one who does
8. -ness: being or quality of
9. -ous: full of
10. -able: capable of being

Exercise M

Answers will vary.

Exercise N

Part I

1. a. order  
b. order  
c. order  

2. a. government  
b. government  
c. other
Answers will vary. The number of questions asked and answered will vary from reader to reader. The idea is to ask as many questions as it takes to completely understand the information in the passage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nearest</td>
<td>States</td>
<td>define</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>freedom</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>States</td>
<td>Even</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>gift</td>
<td>resolved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>five</td>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>Liberty</td>
<td>aspects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>years</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easily</td>
<td>The</td>
<td>understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>United</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>tall</td>
<td>interact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>pedestal</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timetable</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>comprehend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That</td>
<td>figure</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>writer's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>Most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CHAPTER 3

#### Meaning: Beginning Practice

#### Thinking Strategies Part I

These are suggested answers.

1. **Questions**

   - What did Mike receive?
   - Who called?
   - What did the store manager tell Mike?

   **Organize to remember**

   - Mike received a telephone call from the store manager who told him he had won $100.

   **What sentence might . . .**

   - Mike was eager to win.
   - Mike was curious about the contest.

2. **Questions**

   - Who is this about?
   - What did Beth have in her hand?
   - How was Beth walking?
   - Where was Beth going?

   **Organize to remember**

   - Beth had her first paycheck as she walked slowly toward the waiting car.

   **What sentence might . . .**

   - Beth may not be happy.
   - Beth was too tired to walk fast.
   - There was someone in the car who might want to take her paycheck.

3. **Questions**

   - What did the teacher write?
   - Who read the note?
   - What did she do after reading the note?
   - How did she leave the classroom?

   **Answers**

   - note
   - she
   - left the classroom
   - quickly
Meaning: Advanced Practice

These are suggested answers.

1. Questions . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What are their groups?</td>
<td>mutual aid societies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are the groups’ concerns?</td>
<td>common problems and common interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are mutual aid societies?</td>
<td>groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do the groups do?</td>
<td>work on problems, promote interest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Questions . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who had authority over their children?</td>
<td>Parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did the parents have over their children?</td>
<td>authority regarding education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How were parents seen by the community?</td>
<td>as intelligent adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who saw parents as intelligent?</td>
<td>the community</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who did parents have authority over?</td>
<td>their children</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Questions . . .

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What should parents do?</td>
<td>read to children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who should read to children?</td>
<td>parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What should parents read to children?</td>
<td>books of interest which are too difficult</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Organize to remember | What sentence might
--- | ---
Parents read to children | Children who are read to are better readers. Parents should ask their children what kinds of books interest them. Parents can read more difficult books than children can.

books of interest which are too difficult | Children like to have their parents read to them.

Meaning: Challenging Practice

Answers will vary as they did for the Meaning: Beginning Practice and the Meaning: Advanced Practice section.

Thinking Strategies Part II

Answers may vary.

1. a. both full of charm  
   b. both had lots of friends  
   a. one person was out ranked because of clothes worn to class on the first day

2. a. reading and visiting friends can be fun  
   b. reading and visiting friends can help solve problems  
   a. reading can be done when you are alone  
   b. things that you can do while reading—taking a trip.

3. a. The father and mother seemed pleased about the outcome of the case.  
   b. The ex-wife and the girlfriend seemed displeased with the outcome of the case.  
   a. The father and his mother seemed to be pleased while the ex-wife and the girlfriend were not.  
   b. The father views children as wonderful while girlfriend sees them as undisciplined.
   a. descriptive words that are used  
   b. emotional involvement of the speaker

Passage I | Passage II
--- | ---
1. It is about my mother and me.  
2. My mother always said something.  
3. —  
4. no  
5. no  
6. Yes, my mother said something and I would listen.  
1. It is about the talk show host.  
2. He would tell a joke.  
3. —  
4. no  
5. no  
6. Yes, his joke was repeated throughout the show and everyone followed it.
Passage I
7. no
8. inform me
9. Yes, I can remember to think before I speak.

Passage III
1. A young girl who lived in two cities.
2. She loved both cities.
3. —
4. Yes, the seasons.
5. No
6. Yes, the change in seasons caused her to wear different clothing with each change.
7. no
8. entertain
9. no

Passage IV
1. A person who purchased a snow blower.
2. The person bought the snow blower as a result of watching TV commercials.
3. The person believed the claims made in the commercial.
4. no
5. no
6. yes, watching commercials caused the person to buy a snowblower.
7. no
8. entertain
9. Yes; We can become aware of the power of TV commercials to convince people to buy

Selection I Selection II Selection III
person heart it
find be experience
to and is
belt controlled the
oar some the
be has by
firmly as the
pull historically is
the for touching
out whole itself
anything now the
fostering has
 anything practice has
 a yourself light
 an be the
 or how through
 you both red
falls at and
life what the
not important is
are eat it
him general rim
him diet normal
the moderate is
into in

Answers
Chapter 4

Dividing Words

1. abstract
2. endear
3. English
4. techill
5. pleasant
6. vermain
7. verbal
8. doheme
9. research
10. ve splish
11. wea ther
12. premo phob
13. com bina tion
14. cloa di pher
15. mon um ental
16. dal no pap
17. com pre hen sive
18. bar go Reid
19. mel an choly
20. chub ble mont
21. ex am ine
22. sem phre my
23. eu phe mis tic

ab stract
er brag
En glish
te chill
plea sant
ver main
ver bal
do fleme
re search
ve splish
wea ther
pre mo phob
com bi na tion
cloa di pher
mon u men tal
dai no pap
com pre hen sive
bar go reid
mel an choly
chub ble mont
ex am ine
sem phre my
eu phe mis tic
Prefixes

1. not taxable
2. no union
3. does not skid
4. does not think
5. not toxic

Prefixes—One Meaning

Answers will vary. We have listed some additional example words.

1. bioscopy—examination to determine life
2. equilibrium—equal balance between forces
3. intercept—taking from between others
4. malpractice—bad practice
5. microfilm—record of a large amount of information on a small piece of film
6. midlife—middle of life
7. misrepresent—wrongly represented or portrayed
8. polygraph—instrument that records many changes
9. precaution—a careful action taken beforehand
10. unit—one whole

Prefixes—Two Meanings

1. biennial—once in two years; biannual—twice in one year
2. foretell—to tell before it happens; foreground—the part of a picture that is in front or nearest the viewer
3. semianual—one every half year; semiskilled—partly skilled
4. reassure—assure or restore confidence; rebound—bounce back
5. unconcerned—someone not concerned, caring; uncap—removal of a cap

Roots

1. to look beneath or mistrust
2. something to see with or through
Answers

3. something to look at
4. one who looks into matters

Answers will vary. We have listed some additional example words.

1. auditorium—place where one hears
2. phonograph—machine that transmits sounds
3. mobil—able to be moved
4. chronicle—a record of events arranged in order of the times they happened
5. manipulate—work or handle with hands
6. philanderer—one who moves from one love affair to another
7. speedometer—device that measures speed
8. telescope—device used to see objects at great distance
9. tenant—one who holds or owns land
10. astronaut—one who travels in rocket ships

Suffixes

1. one who sails on a ship
2. one who grants or gives favors
3. one who oppresses others
4. one who sells real estate
5. one who invents

Answers will vary. We have listed some additional example words.

Suffixes that identify

1. accessability—be accessible or approachable
2. migration—act of moving, migrating
3. profiteer—one who works at making excessive profit
4. machinist—one who makes or repairs machines
5. foolishness—being unwise, using poor judgment
6. ornament—product used to beautify
7. zoology—science or study of animal life
8. monarchy—government where one person rules
9. hysterics—practice of behaving in an uncontrolled way
10. pesticide—killer of insects
Suffixes that describe

1. debatable—worthy or inclined to be questioned, debated.
2. restless—without rest
3. masterful—can be like a master, domineering, expert
4. latest—after the expected time

Suffixes that show action

1. liquefy—to make liquid or fluid
2. initiate—to cause to begin

Suffixes that focus on how? where?

1. perfectly—in a complete or flawless manner
2. skyward—moving toward the sky

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pennies</td>
<td>important</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>zapped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>audience</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percent</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>introducing</td>
<td>cannot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>famous</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>metals</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>don't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>haven't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>Few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>seems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coins</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layer</td>
<td>Then</td>
<td>makers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>address</td>
<td>sterilize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>At</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>called</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided</td>
<td>laughter</td>
<td>selling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 5

Matching Language Styles

Answers will vary.

Hi. I have good news to share with you. Incompatability has been demonstrated by them. His stomach hurts. He had a stomach ache. The census tells where people live. Census information indicates where people live in this country. Ruling people.

Your Language Style

Stories, you, written, you, thought, my, I, cannot, experiences

Least Formal and Most Formal Language

1. It's broken. It does not work well. It is malfunctioning.
2. You got the time? What time is it? Can you tell me the correct time?
3. That's enough. That is sufficient. That is a sufficient amount.
4. We stick together. We are a tightly knit group. We form a cohesive group.
5. Sit down. Won't you have a seat? Please be seated.
6. Crooked teeth; badly formed teeth; maloccluded dental structures
7. Looks for work; seeks a job; pursues employment
8. A smart shopper; a shrewd customer; a wise consumer
9. Keep quiet; in secret; in strict confidence
10. Important; a pressing matter; of major concern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>percent</td>
<td>semantics</td>
<td>material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>In</td>
<td>implications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rare</td>
<td>constantly</td>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sterility</td>
<td>meanings</td>
<td>concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>already</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>given</td>
<td>strike</td>
<td>computerize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>coping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adults</td>
<td>people</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps</td>
<td>decision</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vaccine</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percent</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provides</td>
<td>likely</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifetime</td>
<td>In</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection I</td>
<td>Selection II</td>
<td>Selection III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td>as</td>
<td>skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rash</td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>following</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rare</td>
<td>meanings</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>only</td>
<td>revolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occurred</td>
<td>different</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>days</td>
<td>kind</td>
<td>years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>became</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linking</td>
<td></td>
<td>presumably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mumps</td>
<td></td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Foreign Phrases

1. accomplished fact
2. by the head
3. poise
4. does not follow or make sense
5. in place of parents
6. calmness
7. unacceptable person
8. error
9. all together
10. on the contrary
11. allowed workers to do as they pleased
12. by the day
13. actual
14. undressed
15. in full

### Word Similarities

#### Part I

1. clever
2. detested
3. induced
4. anger
5. training
6. piercing
7. loved
8. believable
9. new
10. started

#### Part II (suggested answers)

1. join
2. shy
3. first
4. happily
5. losses
6. old
7. inviting
8. revealed
9. control
10. appear
Word Opposites

Part I

1. mobilize
2. respectful
3. vacant
4. confusion
5. amateur

Part II (suggested answers)

1. separated
2. employer
3. public
4. restrained
5. exit

6. demolition
7. safe
8. dispensable
9. manufactured
10. curved

6. dead
7. allowed
8. chaotic
9. clever
10. accepted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>side</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>them</td>
<td>chance</td>
<td>can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>ideas</td>
<td>study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eaters</td>
<td>emerge</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snails</td>
<td>areas</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>weaknesses</td>
<td>geographer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snakes</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buds</td>
<td>conflict</td>
<td>objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>push</td>
<td>error</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>department</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alligators</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alligator's</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>red</td>
<td>search</td>
<td>part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hits</td>
<td>option</td>
<td>those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>Unfortunately</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>fallout</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>ill</td>
<td>tiger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>feelings</td>
<td>range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hunting</td>
<td>that</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>because</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>valuable</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>zoologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>live</td>
<td>conflict</td>
<td>comes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection I</th>
<th>Selection II</th>
<th>Selection III</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>gets</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>packaged</td>
<td>sunlight</td>
<td>answers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>into</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td>inquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canned</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>answered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stored</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>poor</td>
<td>and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sold</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>answers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stored</td>
<td>an</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>accuracy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allows</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>air</td>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuts</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refrigerated</td>
<td>conduction</td>
<td>questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examples</td>
<td>sur:h</td>
<td>more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dates</td>
<td>would</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>The</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>used</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>ground</td>
<td>questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>may</td>
<td>only</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>element</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Chemistry: A Physical Science**

- sciences
- familiar
- suggests
- the
- of
- ever-increasing
- may
- large
- which
- things
- and
- science
- natural
- understanding
- the
- recognize
- in
- science
- composition
- changes
- materials
- century
- and
- hold
- life
Answers

Part I—Marking Words

1. decent
2. program
3. degrade
4. pronounce
5. feather
6. delta
7. slaughter
8. spinster
9. glaucoma
10. idiosyncrasy

Part II—Word Meanings

A. 1. equal
2. life
3. bad
4. small
5. two
6. not
7. wrong
8. before
9. again
10. middle

B. (Return to Chapter 4 to check your answers.)

C. 1. sound
2. hand
3. love of
4. instrument
5. measure

D. (Return to Chapter 4 to check your answers.)

E. 1. being of quality of
2. indicates killer of
3. inclined to, or worthy
4. lack of, without
5. to cause, make or feel
6. manner or direction of doing
7. expression, theory of science of
8. indicates being
9. an action or product
10. science or art of, practices

F. (Return to Chapter 4 to check your answers.)
Part III—Word Similarities and Opposites

A. Web. (Answers may vary.)

B. Web. (Answers may vary.)

Part IV—Study Read System

Toxic Shock Syndrome and Tampons

TSS is a rare disease
mainly strikes women under 30
can be fatal

Symptoms
—flu-like
—sudden high fever
—vomiting or diarrhea
—drop in blood pressure
during period remove tampon
must treat disease quickly
Other Symptoms
- muscle aches
- bloodshot eyes
- sore throat
- sunburn-like rash

Avoiding TSS
Do not use tampons
Alternate tampons and napkins

Cause of TSS
Caused by Staphylococcus aureus (a bacterium)
Staph produces a toxin
- toxin gets into bloodstream & causes disease
No one knows why tampons cause TSS.
Few women are affected
No evidence of it being contagious
Women who have had it should not use tampons.

Curing TSS
Patients are placed in intensive care
They get large amounts of fluids
They are treated with drugs
Antibiotics do not help
Antibiotics may prevent future occurrences

Rewritten Study Notes
TSS is a disease that mainly strikes women. It must be treated quickly. It can be fatal. Some flu-like symptoms of the disease are: (1) sudden high fever, (2) vomiting or diarrhea, and (3) drop in blood pressure. Other symptoms are: (1) muscle aches, (2) bloodshot eyes, (3) sore throat, and (4) sunburn-like rash. If women experience the symptoms during periods they should remove tampon.

Women can avoid TSS by not using tampons and alternating tampon use with napkin use.

TSS is caused by Staphylococcus aureus (a bacterium). It produces a toxin that gets into the bloodstream and carries the disease. No one knows why tampons cause TSS. Few women get it.